ARTEP 55-716-MTP

Mission Training Plan for the Transportation Motor Transport Battalion

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION. Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

Army Training and
Evaluation Program
No. 55-716-MTP

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, D.C., 1 April 2002

Mission Training Plan for the Transportation Motor Transport Battalion

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

PREFACE iii

CHAPTER 1. UNIT TRAINING
1-1. GENERAL 1-1
1-2. SUPPORTING MATERIALS 1-1
1-3. CONTENTS 1-2
1-4. MISSIONS AND TASKS 1-2
1-5. PRINCIPLES OF TRAINING 1-4
1-6. COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY 1-5
1-7. CONDUCTING TRAINING 1-6
1-8. FORCE PROTECTION (SAFETY) 1-7
1-9. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION 1-10
1-10. EVALUATION 1-12
1-11. FEEDBACK 1-12

CHAPTER 2. TRAINING MATRIX
2-1. GENERAL 2-1
2-2. TRAINING MATRIX: MISSION TO COLLECTIVE TASKS 2-1

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION. Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

*This publication supersedes ARTEP 55-716-MTP, 3 November 1993.

Page

CHAPTER 3. MISSION OUTLINE
3-1. GENERAL 3-1
3-2. MISSION OUTLINE 3-1

CHAPTER 4. TRAINING EXERCISES
4-1. GENERAL 4-1
4-2. FIELD TRAINING EXERCISES 4-1
4-3. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISES 4-1

CHAPTER 5. TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES
5-1. GENERAL 5-1
5-2. STRUCTURE 5-1
5-3. FORMAT 5-1
5-4. OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS 5-2
5-5. USAGE OF T&EO 5-2

CHAPTER 6. EXTERNAL EVALUATION
6-1. GENERAL 6-1
6-2. PREPARING THE EVALUATION 6-1
6-3. SELECTING THE OBSERVER/CONTROLLERS 6-8
6-4. TRAINING THE OBSERVER/CONTROLLERS 6-8
6-5. RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION 6-9
6-6. SELECTING AND TRAINING THE OPFOR 6-9
6-7. CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION 6-13
6-8. CONDUCTING THE AFTER ACTION REVIEW 6-15

APPENDIX A. COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY A-1

APPENDIX B. ARMY UNIVERSAL TASK LIST B-1

APPENDIX C. THE EFFECTS OF THE LAWS OF LAND WARFARE ON COMBAT HEALTH SUPPORT C-1

GLOSSARY Glossary-1

REFERENCES References-1

QUESTIONNAIRE Questionnaire-1

PREFACE

The purpose of the MTP is to provide a descriptive, performance-oriented training guide to assist leaders in training their units. The MTP contains tasks that support the unit's mission(s) outlined in doctrinal manuals. Unit leaders must use their METL to identify which collective tasks in the MTP must be trained. Task standards in the MTP are the Army's standards for executing those tasks. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered. This MTP also contains Appendix A (Combined Arms Training Strategy), Appendix B (Army Universal Task List), and Appendix C (The Effects of the Laws of Land Warfare on Combat Health Support). This MTP is in full alignment with and is part of the United States Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP applies to TOE 55716LO, Transportation Motor Transport Battalion.

Unless otherwise stated, the masculine gender is used for both men and women.

The proponent of this publication is HQ TRADOC. Submit changes for improving this publication on DA Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) and forward it to: Commander, USACASCOM, Training Directorate, Transportation Training Division, ATTN: ATCL-AT, Fort Lee, VA 23801-1511.

ENVIRONMENTAL TRAINING AND INTEGRATION

The US Army environmental strategy into the 21st century defines the Army's leadership commitment and philosophy for meeting present and future environmental challenges. It provides a framework to ensure that environmental stewardship ethic governs all Army activities. As an integral part of all Army missions, the Army's environmental vision is to be a national leader in environmental and natural resource stewardship for present and future generations. The Army's environmental vision statement communicates the Army's commitment to the environment.

Soldiers and leaders are expected to serve as the Army's basic environmental stewards and have a professional and personal responsibility to understand the Army's environmental program.

Soldiers and leaders must understand their specific duties and responsibilities concerning protection of the environment, and comply with environmental laws and regulations. Commanders must stay current of federal, state, local, and HN laws and must apply whichever are the most stringent.

Stewardship of our environment is part of our mission to maintain a trained and ready Army. Leadership is the key to success. Each leader in the chain of command, including the NCO support channels, is responsible for ensuring that the Army environmental strategy is implemented and that environmental stewardship is an integral part of everything we do. Each soldier, civilian, and family member is a steward of the environment. America's Army shares with all Americans their values of democracy, equal opportunity, and wise use of environmental assets. The American people expect the Army to manage the resources intrusted to it.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AND HAZARD AWARENESS NOTICE

DEATH or serious injury may result if personnel fail to observe safety precautions.

WARNINGS

FUEL FLAMMABLE/NO SMOKING

Fuel is flammable and toxic to eyes, skin, and respiratory tract. Skin/eye protection is required. Avoid repeated/prolonged contact. Use only in well ventilated areas. Keep away from open flames or other sources of ignition. Post **FUEL FLAMMABLE/NO SMOKING** signs around the area. Suitable fire extinguisher must be present.

Fuel on clothing can be fatal if ignited by a static discharge. If fuel gets on your clothes, leave the refueling area as soon as possible and wet clothes with water before taking them off. In extreme cold conditions, clothes should not be wet; instead, ground yourself to a piece of grounded equipment by taking hold of it before taking off your clothes. Wash skin with warm soapy water.

Spilled fuel creates a flammable, vapor-air mixture and fire can take place. Stop refueling immediately if fuel spill occurs.

FROSTBITE

Touching cold metal with exposed skin will cause skin to bond with metal. Gloves are required when touching cold metal objects. Do not touch cold metal parts with bare hands.

SOLVENT HAZARD

Dry cleaning solvent, P-D 680, Type III, used to clean parts is potentially dangerous to personnel and property. Eye protection is required. Avoid repeated and prolonged skin contact by wearing rubber or nonporous gloves when handling solvents or material wet with dry cleaning solvent. Wash hands wiith soap and water immediately after exposure and use a lanolin based skin cream to prevent skin drying. Do not use near open flame or excessive heat. Flash point of solvent is 138 degrees F. Do not work with solvent in a closed area. Be sure there is good ventilation or the solvent vapors will build up in the air and become a poisonous mixture which can cause physical injury or even death.

ELECTRICAL HIGH VOLTAGE CAN KILL YOU

Electrical high voltage cannot be seen, but it can kill you. Electricity is unlike most other dangerous things you can come in contact with because it gives no warning and no symptoms; and its effects are immediate. It can kill you, render you unconscious, or severely burn you. To ensure your safety and that of other maintenance personnel, always observe the following precautions:

- **DO NOT** perform any maintenance on electrical equipment unless all power is removed.

- **BE CERTAIN** that there is someone assisting you who can remove power immediately.

- **ALWAYS** place **POWER OFF** warning tags on power supply switches so that no one will apply power while you are performing maintenance.

- FOR **ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION**, refer to **FM 21-11**.

COMPRESSED AIR HAZARD

Compressed air can blow dust into the eyes. Wear eye protection. Do not exceed 30 psi at the nozzle. ***FIRST AID*** instructions are given in ***FM 21-11***.

CARBON MONOXIDE (EXHAUST GAS) CAN KILL YOU

Carbon monoxide is without color or smell, but can kill you. Breathing carbon monoxide produces symptoms of headache, dizziness, loss of muscular control, a sleepy feeling, and coma. Brain damage or death can result from heavy exposure. Carbon monoxide occurs in the exhaust fumes of burning heaters and internal combustion engines. Carbon monoxide can become dangerously concentrated under conditions of no ventilation. Precautions must be followed to ensure operator's safety when combustion engines are in operation.

- OPERATE with the exhaust pipes unobstructed.

- DO NOT operate the powered module with a known exhaust (combustion air) leak.

- BE ALERT at all times during operating procedures for carbon monoxide poisoning. If exposure is present, ***IMMEDIATELY*** evacuate personnel to fresh air.

- BE AWARE the field protection mask used for NBC attack **WILL NOT** protect you from carbon monoxide poisoning.

THE BEST DEFENSE AGAINST CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING IS GOOD VENTILATION.

JEWELRY

Jewelry can catch on equipment and cause injury, or may short across an electrical circuit and cause severe burns or electrical shock. Remove rings, bracelets, wristwatches, and neck chains before working around or on the unit.

HOT COMPONENTS

Contact with hot components can cause burns. Allow unit to cool down before attempting service, inspection, or maintenance activity.

STEEL BANDING

Steel banding, cut under tension, can snap free and cause injury. Leather gloves and faceshield are required.

FUEL SPILL

Fuel is toxic and can cause injury to personnel and damage equipment. Improper positioning of external fuel source can cause the internal fuel tank to overflow. Properly position external fuel source.

NOTE

Report all hazards. If at any time you detect a hazard, it is your responsibility to report the hazard to ensure that it is corrected. If you detect a "new" or "suspected new" hazard, particularly due to equipment installation, modification, or repair, it is your responsibility to report through your chain-of-command to ensure that a **SAFETYGRAM** is submitted to the US Army Aviation and Troop Command, Safety Office. This will ensure that this hazard will be investigated, publicized, or corrected, as required.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Environmental damage has many wide-ranging consequences. The complete success of the tactical mission depends on your environmental awareness. Leaders and soldiers must be aware of the ramifications of their actions on the environment, which, in turn, reflects upon the overall mission. Prevention of spills and improper disposal of hazardous materials and hazardous waste is everyone's responsibility. Know the proper procedures for preventing and reporting oil or fuel spills IAW your local unit SOP.

CHAPTER 1

UNIT TRAINING

1-1. GENERAL. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program will depend on the following factors.

a. Unit's METL.

b. Chain of command training directives and guidance.

c. Training priorities of this unit.

d. Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. SUPPORTING MATERIALS. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented TMT battalion training program, which is part of a TRANSCOM training program. The training program consists of an MTP and includes the following:

a. STPs for the appropriate MOSs and skill levels.

b. MQS-II manuals for the company grade officers.

Figure 1-1 illustrates the relationship of these supporting materials.

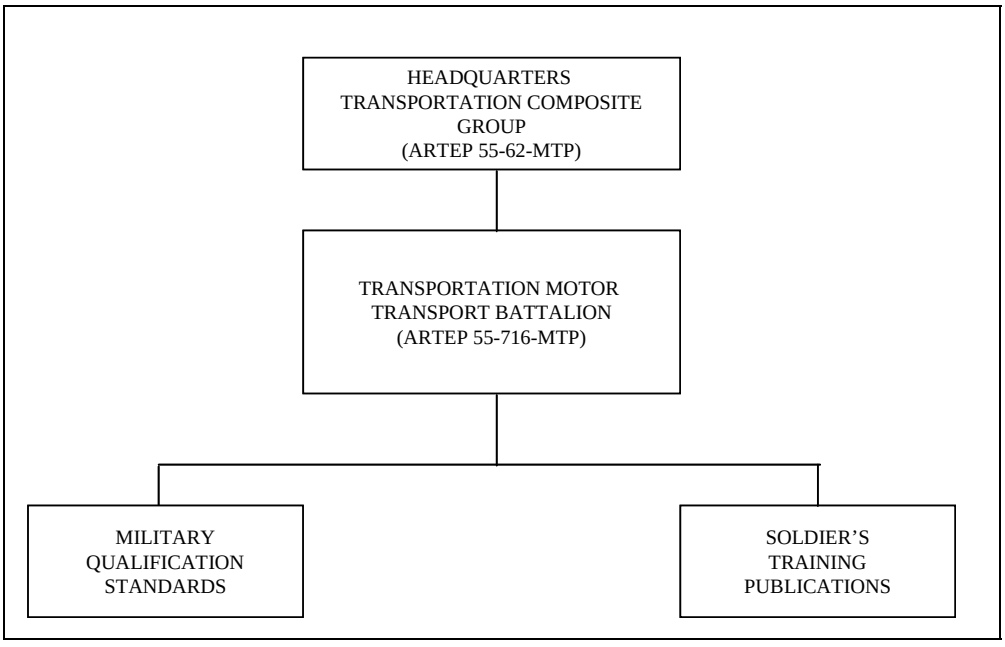


Figure 1-1. MTP echelon relationship diagram

1-3. CONTENTS. This MTP is organized into six chapters.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP for establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrix, shows the relationship between mission and collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outline, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between the missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of an FTX and its supporting STXs. They provide training information and a canned scenario. They can also serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training and evaluation criteria for all tasks the unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps and performance measures. Each T&EO is part of a mission, and in various combinations, composes training exercises in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for developing an external evaluation.

1-4. MISSIONS AND TASKS. This MTP concerns specified missions found in the TOE and implied missions, which the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical wartime mission is the focal mission for this unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for this unit.

a. Critical Wartime Mission. To provide transportation services.

b. Missions.

(1) Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations.

(2) Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources.

(3) Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities.

(4) Direct Transportation Support.

(5) Supervise Force Protection.

(6) Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station.

c. The Critical Wartime Mission Echelon Relationship diagram shows the relationship of this unit’s mission to those of the next higher echelon. Figure 1-2 shows the mission relationship of this unit’s missions of the TMT battalion.

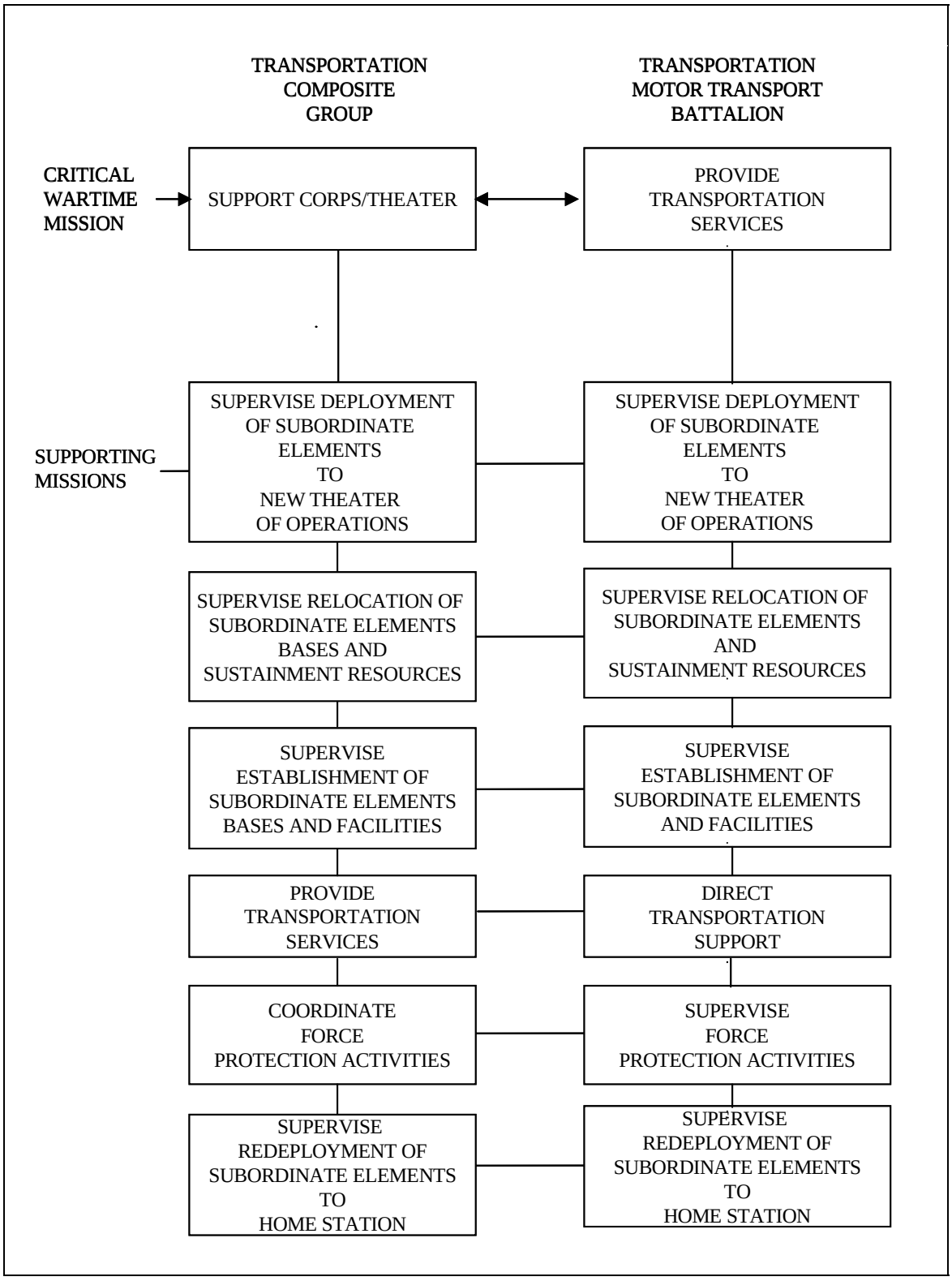


Figure 1-2. Critical wartime mission echelon relationship diagram for the TMT Battalion

d. Each task can be trained individually or jointly with other tasks. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EO. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the TMT battalion to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation designed by the Transportation Composite Group to evaluate the battalion's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

e. Leader tasks supporting the unit's missions are trained through STPs and MQS training, battle simulations, and by execution of this unit's mission.

f. Individual tasks that support the unit's tasks are mastered by training to standards in the appropriate STP.

1-5. PRINCIPLES OF TRAINING. This MTP is based on the training principles outlined in FM 25-100.

a. Train as a Combined Arms and Service Team. Today's Army doctrine requires combined arms and service teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms and services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when teams train together.

b. Train as You Fight. The goal of combat-level training is to achieve combat-level standards. Every effort must be made to attain this difficult goal. Within the confines of safety and common sense, leaders must be willing to accept less-than-perfect results initially and to demand realism in training. They must integrate realistic conditions, such as smoke, noise, simulated NBC, battlefield debris, loss of key leaders, and cold weather.

c. Use Appropriate Doctrine. Training must conform to Army doctrine. In units, new soldiers will have little time to learn non-standard procedures. Therefore, units must train on peacetime training tasks to the Army standards in the MTPs, STPs, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications.

d. Use Performance-Oriented Training. Units become proficient in performing critical tasks and missions by practicing them. Soldiers learn best by doing, using a hands-on approach. Leaders are responsible for developing and executing a training strategy that will provide these opportunities. All training assets and resources, including simulators, simulations, and training devices, must be included in the strategy.

e. Train to Challenge. Tough, realistic, and intellectually and physically challenging training both excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Challenging training inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.

f. Train to Sustain Proficiency. Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to repeat critical task training at the minimum frequency necessary for sustainment. MTPs and the ITEP are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

g. Train Using Multiechelon Techniques. To use available time and resources most effectively, commanders must simultaneously train individuals, leaders, and units at each echelon in the organization during training events.

h. Train to Maintain. Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Maintenance training, designed to keep equipment in the fight, is as equally important to soldiers as being experts in the use of the equipment. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness in support of training or combat employment.

i. Make Commanders the Primary Trainers. The leaders in the chain of command are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organization.

1-6. COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY. CATS is designed to provide Army leaders a strategy that states the rationale and justification for requesting all Army training resources in both institutions and units. It provides training management guidance for institutional commandants and unit commanders to plan and execute required training to established Army standards. Institutional strategies are prescriptive and define the mandatory training requirements for qualifying soldiers and leaders to specified levels of competency in respective functional specialties. The training program developed and executed by this unit to train to standards in its wartime missions is also a component of the CATS. CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. The major focus of CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and resources required to train to standard.

a. The unit training strategies in CATS provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training. While the "menu" may reflect an optional guide for training to standard, it is unlikely that all units will have the exact mix of resources required to execute such a strategy.

b. This unit's training strategy, contained in Appendix A, is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training this unit to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP the tasks required to train his METL. The training strategies provide the means to train these tasks through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. This unit's training strategy consists of two separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused strategy, which permits this unit to train to standard. The elements of this unit's training strategy are as follows:

(1) CSS unit training strategy. This strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and to depict those resources that are required to support training events. CSS unit training strategies must address both the technical (mission) and tactical (maneuver/survival) training needs of CSS soldiers and units.

(2) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A critical element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. These gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before

proceeding to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run methodology. For example, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks contained in the STX must be trained to standard prior to conducting the FTX. Standards must be specific so that a commander can assess the preparedness of his soldiers or unit(s) to proceed to more complex training events. By using training gates, the unit's METL and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the unit's training plan, the commander identifies the training tasks from the MTP required to train his METL. He also uses the training strategy found in Appendix A to develop a battle-focused training plan that integrates and links METL-derived training tasks with CATS training events.

1-7. CONDUCTING TRAINING. This MTP helps the planning, preparation, and conduct of unit training as explained in FM 25-series.

a. The commander assigns missions and tasks for training based on his METL and training guidance from the higher HQ. Trainers must plan and execute training in support of this guidance.

b. The review of the missions and tasks outlined in Chapter 3 should determine whether the FTX and STXs will support, or can be modified to support, the commander's guidance. If it does not or needs to be modified, a review of the matrix in Chapter 2 will identify all the critical collective tasks that the unit must master to perform a specific mission.

c. The commander and subordinate leaders must prioritize all tasks. Because there is never enough time to train everything, training must focus on the unit's greatest training challenges and its most difficult sustainment skills.

d. The commander must integrate tasks into the training schedule according to the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in priority and frequency they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how he can best use multiechelon training.

(3) Determine the training location(s).

(4) Determine training responsibilities and his involvement.

(5) Organize his needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. The commander must approve the list of tasks to be trained and schedule them on the training schedule.

f. The commander must determine the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. The commander must keep subordinate leaders informed and oversee their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. FORCE PROTECTION (SAFETY).

a. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders and soldiers use risk assessment/management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibilities, institutionalizes commander's review of operational safety and leads to decision-making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations and all other types of operations. Safety begins with readiness, which determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preference that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including required equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but it also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c. Safety demands total chain of command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain of command responsibilities include the following:

(1) Commanders.

(a) Seek optimum, not adequate performance.

(b) Specify the risk they will accept to accomplish the mission.

(c) Select risk reductions provided by staff.

(d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.

(e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.

(2) Staff.

(a) Assists the commander in assessing risks and in developing risk reduction options when planning training.

(b) Integrates risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.

(c) Eliminates unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.

(d) Assesses safety performance during training.

(e) Evaluates safety performance during AARs.

(3) Subordinate leaders.

(a) Apply consistently effective risk management concepts and methods to operations they lead.

(b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

(4) Individual soldier.

(a) Reports unsafe conditions and acts and corrects the situation when possible.

(b) Establishes a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.

(c) Takes responsibility for personal safety.

(d) Works as a team member.

(e) Modifies own risk behavior.

d. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision making process outlined in FM 101-5. The five steps are as follows:

(1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the missions.

(2) Assess hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of its causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix (see Figure 1-3) is a tool for assessing hazards.

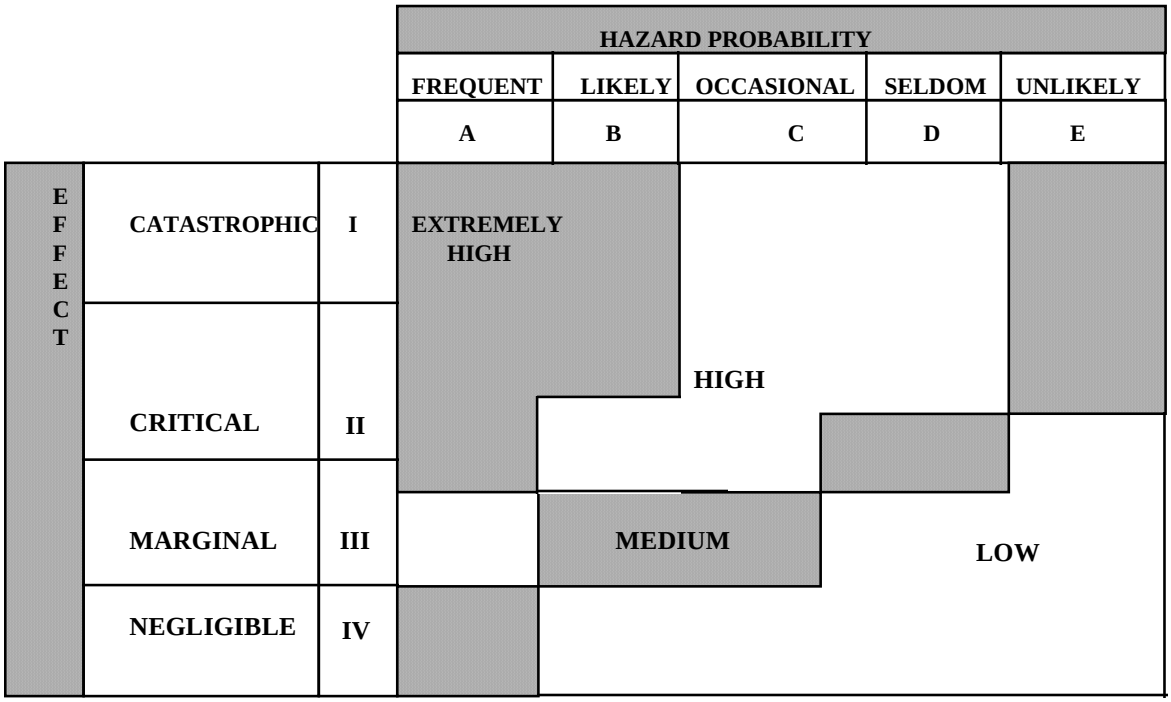


Figure 1-3. Risk assessment matrix

(3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make any residual risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into plans, OPLANs, OPORDs, SOPs, and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards to include follow-up and after action. Develop the lessons learned.

e. Fratricide is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment, that result in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment/management is the mechanism with which incidences of fratricide can be controlled.

f. The primary causes of fratricide are as follows:

(1) Direct-fire control plan failures. These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(2) Land navigation failures. These result when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.

(3) Combat identification failure. These failures include gunners or pilots who are unable to distinguish thermal/optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited visibility conditions.

(4) Inadequate control measures. Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) Weapons error. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives and hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance, unmarked or unrecorded minefields, FASCAM, and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, remove, record, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

g. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe the following consequences:

(1) Loss of confidence in the unit's leadership.

(2) Increasing self-doubt among leaders.

(3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(4) Over-supervision of units.

(5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(7) Loss of initiative.

(8) Disrupted operations.

(9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease, and if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management, and is based on the same philosophy as safety risk management. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. Identify hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of METT-T factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural/historical artifacts.

b. Assess the hazards. Analyzes potential severity of environmental degradation using environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-4). Severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, medium, or low, using the environmental assessment matrixes.

Environmental Area					Rating:	
Unit Operations	**Risk Impact**					
Movement of heavy vehicles systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Environmental Risk Assessment Worksheet	5	4	3	2	1	0

	Movement of heavy vehicles/ systems	Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	Assembly area activities	Field maintenance of equipment	Garrison maintenance of equipment	Risk rating
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous material/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threaten/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form

Category	Range	Environmental	Decision Maker
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate Level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate Level
High	118-149	Significant	Division Cdr
Extremely High	150-175	Severe	MACOM Cdr

Risk Categories

Figure 1-4. Environmental risk assessment matrix

c. Make environmental risk decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. Brief chain of command. Brief chain of command (to include installation environment office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. Implement controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. Supervise. Supervise/enforce environmental protection standards.

1-10. EVALUATION. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 list the standards, which the unit must meet for each task.

a. Evaluation can be internal or external. An internal evaluation can be conducted at any level and must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are formal and are conducted by the COSCOM.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task each time it is performed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Every training exercise provides the potential for evaluation feedback, and every evaluation is a training session. Because leaders frequently do not evaluate continuously, you must ensure that trainers and leaders continually evaluate training as it is being done.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. Outside evaluators usually make this unfeasible for higher level exercises. AARs should be planned at frequent, logical intervals during exercises. This is a proven technique which will allow you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone’s mind and will prevent reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. FEEDBACK. Your recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this ARTEP MTP answers the training needs of units in the field.

CHAPTER 2

TRAINING MATRIX

2-1. GENERAL. The training matrix (Table 2-1) assists the commander in planning and executing unit training. The matrix is an organized set of relationships, which can be used to determine the missions and tasks to be performed in a specific situation or exercise.

2-2. TRAINING MATRIX: MISSION TO COLLECTIVE TASKS. This training matrix illustrates the relationship between the unit missions and their component collective tasks. The AUTL are tools used to list all essential elements of the Army Division's combat power. The collective tasks are listed under the appropriate AUTL. An asterisk in the matrix identifies the AUTL. Appendix B defines the systems used in this matrix. The training matrix is used to plan the training for a specific mission or AUTL. The commander determines which tasks, in training each AUTL, to perform. Based on the known proficiency of the unit, the training should concentrate on the unit's weaknesses. Training in AUTL can be accomplished by providing training in all tasks listed in a specific system.

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix)

	MISSIONS					
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	Direct Transportation Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
***DEVELOP INTELLI-GENCE** Provide Intelligence Support (63-1-4051)		X			X	
***DEPLOY/ CONDUCT MANEUVER** Perform Battalion Advance/ Quartering Party Activities (63-1-4015)		X	X			
Establish Battalion Command Post (Forward) (63-1-4016)			X			

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	Direct Transportation Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements (63-1-4018)		X				
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion Headquarters (63-1-4019)			X			
Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center (LOC) (63-1-4020)			X			
Direct Deploy-ment Alert Activities (63-1-4850)	X					
Establish the Emergency Operations Center (63-1-4851)	X					
Operate the Emergency Operations Center (63-1-4852)	X					
Supervise Battalion Deployment/ Redeployment Activities (63-1-4853)	X					X

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	Direct Transportation Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
Update Movement Plan/Order (63-1-4854)	X					
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support (63-1-4855)	X					
Provide Deployment Human Resources Support (63-1-4856)	X					
Coordinate Family Assistance Support (63-1-4857)	X					
Coordinate Deployment Training Support (63-1-4858)	X					
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions (63-1-4859)	X					
Provide Deployment Logistics Support (63-1-4860)	X					

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	Direct Transportation Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities (63-1-4861)	X					
Coordinate Onward Movement (63-1-4862)		X				
Coordinate Rear Detach-ment Support (63-1-4863)	X					
Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities (63-1-4864)	X					
Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeploy-ment (63-1-4865)						X
Prepare Re-deployment Movement Plan/Order (63-1-4866)						X
Provide Re-deployment Support (63-1-4867)						X
Perform Re-deployment Advance Party Activities (63-1-4868)						X
Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities (63-1-4869)						X

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	Direct Transportation Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
Coordinate Home Station Activities (63-1-4870)						X
Direct Integra-tion Activities (63-1-4871)	X					
Plan Battalion Deployment in a Peacetime Environment (63-1-4872)	X					
***PROTECT THE FORCE** Supervise Operations Security Program (63-1-4038)		X	X	X	X	
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations (63-1-4040)		X	X	X	X	
***PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAIN-MENT** Conduct Command Religious Support Program (16-1-1001.63)	X	X	X	X	X	X
Coordinate Internal Logistics (63-1-4025)				X		

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	Direct Transportation Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
Provide Human Resources Support - Administrative Services (63-1-4043)		X	X	X	X	
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduc-tion and Prevention Procedures (63-1-4303)	X	X	X	X	X	X
Perform Risk Management Procedures (63-1-4326)	X	X	X	X	X	X
***EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL** Supervise Establishment of Truck Terminal or Trailer Transfer Point (55-1-0015)				X		
Prepare for Battalion Transportation Support Activities (55-1-0016)				X		

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	Direct Transportation Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
Coordinate Transportation Support (55-1-0017)				X		
Supervise Truck Terminal/ Trailer Transfer Point Operations (55-1-0021)				X		
Conduct Mission Analysis (63-1-4001)		X		X		
Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (63-1-4002)		X				
Formulate Feasible Courses of Action (63-1-4003)		X				
Develop Intelligence Estimate (63-1-4004)		X				
Develop Personnel Estimate (63-1-4005)		X				
Develop Logistics Estimate (63-1-4006)		X				

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	Direct Transportation Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
Develop Support Operations Estimate (63-1-4007)		X				
Develop Supporting Commander's (Operations) Estimate (63-1-4008)		X				
Prepare Operations Plan/ Operations Order and Annexes (63-1-4009)		X				
Develop Road Movement Order (63-1-4010)		X				
Develop Occupation Plan (63-1-4011)		X				
Plan Battalion Area Tactical Operations (63-1-4012)		X	X			
Plan Rear Operations (63-1-4014)	X					
Establish Communications (63-1-4017)			X			
Operate the Support Area of Logistics Operations Center (63-1-4022)				X		

Table 2-1. Training matrix (missions to collective task matrix) (continued)

MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	Direct Transportation Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center (63-1-4037)				X		
Maintain Communica-tions (63-1-4041)			X	X	X	
Provide Command and Control (63-1-4045)		X	X	X	X	
Operate Base Cluster Operations Center (63-1-4050)				X		
Direct Response to Threat Actions (63-1-4052)					X	
Direct Area Damage Control Operations (63-1-4053)					X	
Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order (63-1-4873)	X					
Plan Battalion Redeployment (63-1-4874)						X

CHAPTER 3

MISSION OUTLINE

3-1. GENERAL. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their supporting tasks.

3-2. MISSION OUTLINE. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the ability of this unit to perform its missions. The mission outline, Figure 3-1, provides the commander with a visual outline of his unit's missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

FTX C-A					
PROVIDE TRANSPORTATION SERVICES					
STX C-1		STX C-2		STX C-3	
Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations		Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources		Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	
63-1-4850	63-1-4860	63-1-4051	63-1-4002	63-1-4015	63-1-4043
63-1-4851	63-1-4861	63-1-4015	63-1-4003	63-1-4016	63-1-4303
63-1-4852	63-1-4863	63-1-4018	63-1-4004	63-1-4019	63-1-4326
63-1-4853	63-1-4864	63-1-4862	63-1-4005	63-1-4020	63-1-4012
63-1-4854	63-1-4871	63-1-4038	63-1-4006	63-1-4038	63-1-4017
63-1-4855	63-1-4872	63-1-4040	63-1-4007	63-1-4040	63-1-4041
63-1-4856	16-1-1001.63	16-1-1001.63	63-1-4008	16-1-1001.63	63-1-4045
63-1-4857	63-1-4303	63-1-4043	63-1-4009		
63-1-4858	63-1-4326	63-1-4303	63-1-4010		
63-1-4859	63-1-4014	63-1-4326	63-1-4011		
	63-1-4873	63-1-4001	63-1-4012		
			63-1-4045		

Figure 3-1. Transportation motor transport battalion missions outline

FTX C-A					
PROVIDE TRANSPORTATION SERVICES					
STX C-4		**STX C-5**		**STX C-6**	
Direct Transportation Support		Supervise Force Protection		Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station	
63-1-4038	55-5-0017	63-1-4051	63-1-4303	63-1-4853	63-1-4969
63-1-4040	55-1-0021	63-1-4038	63-1-4326	63-1-4865	63-1-4870
16-1-1001.63	63-1-4001	63-1-4040	63-1-4041	63-1-4866	16-1-1001.63
63-1-4025	63-1-4022	16-1-1001.63	63-1-4045	63-1-4867	63-1-4303
63-1-4043	63-1-4037	63-1-4043	63-1-4052	63-1-4868	63-1-4326
63-1-4303	63-1-4041		63-1-4053		63-1-4874
63-1-4326	63-1-4045				
55-1-0015	63-1-4050				
55-1-0016					

Figure 3-1. Transportation motor transport battalion missions outline (continued)

CHAPTER 4

TRAINING EXERCISES

4-1. GENERAL. Training exercises are used to train and practice personnel in the performance of collective tasks. This MTP has two types of exercises: FTX and STX. These exercises assist you in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the battalion mission proficiency. This MTP has one FTX and six STXs (see Table 4-1).

4-2. FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the motor transport battalion to train its critical wartime mission. This FTX provides a logical sequence for the performance of tasks previously trained in the STXs.

4-3. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE. The STX is a short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercise used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. The battalion commander may modify the STX based on local METT-T and available personnel and equipment. The STX provides the information for training personnel to perform the missions that make up the overall critical wartime mission. The STX performs the following functions:

a. Provides repetitive training on the missions.

b. Allows training to focus on identified weaknesses.

c. Allows the motor transport battalion to practice the mission before the critical wartime mission.

d. Saves time by providing a majority of the information needed to develop a method for training.

4-4. SAFETY. During any training exercise, soldiers and leaders must be safety conscious. Evaluators and trainers have the responsibility to ensure that all training is conducted within established safety constraints. Prior to each exercise, all personnel will be briefed on specific safety measures that are to be taken during execution.

Table 4-1. Training exercises

EXERCISE	TITLE	PAGE
FTX C-A	Provide Transportation Services	4-3
STX C-1	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	4-14
STX C-2	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	4-20
STX C-3	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	4-26

Table 4-1. Training exercises (continued)

EXERCISE	TITLE	PAGE
STX C-4	Direct Transportation Support	4-32
STX C-5	Supervise Force Protection Activities	4-38
STX C-6	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station	4-44

TRANSPORTATION MOTOR TRANSPORT BATTALION

FTX C-A

PROVIDE TRANSPORTATION SERVICES

1. Objective. This FTX is designed to provide the TMT battalion commander, staff, and key personnel with training in its critical wartime mission to provide transportation services. The TMT battalion staff and key personnel must become proficient in the supervision of deployment, relocation, establishment of subordinate elements, and directing transportation support. The TMT battalion staff and key personnel provide command and control, planning, and supervision of attached motor transport companies and attached units. The TMT battalion staff and key personnel must be proficient in the supervision of force protection activities and redeployment of subordinate elements to home station. The tasks that are executed during this exercise are listed in Table 4-2, pages 4-5 through 4-7.

2. Interface.

a. This FTX supports the Transportation Composite Group FTX, Support Corps/Theater.

b. The following STXs support the TMT battalion FTX:

(1) Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations (STX C-1).

(2) Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources (STX C-2).

(3) Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities (STX C-3).

(4) Direct Transportation Support (STX C-4).

(5) Supervise Force Protection Activities (STX C-5).

(6) Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station (STX C-6).

3. Training Enhancers.

a. Chapter 2, Training Matrix, shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the TMT battalion missions. Training that will improve the TMT battalion ability to perform its missions are:

(1) Planning, controlling, and providing transportation services; establishing command and control for all assigned or attached units; self defense operations. This training may be conducted in garrison and in local training area by one of the following methods:

(a) MAPEX combined with a sand or terrain table model exercise. A map of the actual area where the FTX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the terrain should be used, if possible.

(b) Tactical exercise without troops.

(c) COMEX (to practice communications techniques).

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit in leaders and battalion by the following activities:

(a) Aggressive battalion sport and physical fitness program.

(b) Leader and individual confidence courses.

(c) Appropriate training films that have aggressive and positive effect on the soldiers.

(d) Awareness of battalion's heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order and ends after redeployment of the TMT battalion and headquarters detachment to home station. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-3, pages 4-9 and 4-10. Table 4-3 is a suggested scenario. Figure 4-1, page 4-11, illustrates the general sequence of task performances in this exercise.

c. This exercise may be conducted under several options. These options are not all inclusive, and can be exercise in various combinations.

(1) Conditional options, in support of:

(a) Offensive operations.

(b) Defensive operations.

(c) Retrograde operations.

(d) Day or night operations.

(e) Adverse weather conditions.

(2) Operational options.

(a) Direct transportation support.

(b) Supervise force protection activities (develop base defense plan, plan battalion area tactical operations, and direct response to threat).

(c) Conduct self-recovery operations (receive, move, and to recover mired or disabled vehicle).

Table 4-2. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use for evaluating FTX C-A

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Provide Intelligence Support	63-1-4051	5-6
Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-1-4015	5-9
Establish Battalion Command Post (Forward)	63-1-4016	5-14
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	63-1-4018	5-17
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion Headquarters	63-1-4019	5-20
Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center (LOC)	63-1-4020	5-23
Direct Deployment Alert Activities	63-1-4850	5-26
Establish the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4851	5-29
Operate the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4852	5-32
Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities	63-1-4853	5-35
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4854	5-40
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	63-1-4855	5-43
Provide Deployment Human Resources Support	63-1-4856	5-46
Coordinate Family Assistance Support	63-1-4857	5-50
Coordinate Deployment Training Support	63-1-4858	5-53
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	63-1-4859	5-55
Provide Deployment Logistics Support	63-1-4860	5-58
Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	63-1-4861	5-64
Coordinate Onward Movement	63-1-4862	5-67
Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	63-1-4863	5-71
Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	63-1-4864	5-74
Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment	63-1-4865	5-77

Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4866	5-80

Table 4-2. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use for evaluating FTX C-A (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Provide Redeployment Support	63-1-4867	5-83
Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	63-1-4868	5-88
Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	63-1-4869	5-91
Coordinate Home Station Activities	63-1-4870	5-94
Direct Integration Activities	63-1-4871	5-98
Plan Battalion Deployment in a Peacetime Environment	63-1-4872	5-101
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-1-4038	5-105
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-1-4040	5-108
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	16-1-1001.63	5-115
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-1-4025	5-119
Provide Human Resources Support - Administrative Services	63-1-4043	5-124
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-128
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-131
Supervise Establishment of Truck Terminal or Trailer Transfer Point	55-1-0015	5-134
Prepare for Battalion Transportation Support Activities	55-1-0016	5-137
Coordinate Transportation Support	55-1-0017	5-142
Supervise Truck Terminal/Trailer Transfer Point Operations	55-1-0021	5-145
Conduct Mission Analysis	63-1-4001	5-151
Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield	63-1-4002	5-155
Formulate Feasible Courses of Action	63-1-4003	5-159
Develop Intelligence Estimate	63-1-4004	5-162
Develop Personnel Estimate	63-1-4005	5-166

Develop Logistics Estimate	63-1-4006	5-170

Table 4-2. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use for evaluating FTX C-A (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Develop Support Operations Estimate	63-1-4007	5-174
Develop Supporting Commander's (Operations) Estimate	63-1-4008	5-178
Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order and Annexes	63-1-4009	5-184
Develop Road Movement Order	63-1-4010	5-189
Develop Occupation Plan	63-1-4011	5-196
Plan Battalion Area Tactical Operations	63-1-4012	5-200
Plan Rear Operations	63-1-4014	5-203
Establish Communications	63-1-4017	5-208
Operate the Support Area of Logistics Operations Center	63-1-4022	5-213
Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-1-4037	5-219
Maintain Communications	63-1-4041	5-223
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-229
Operate Base Cluster Operations Center	63-1-4050	5-232
Direct Response to Threat Actions	63-1-4052	5-235
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-1-4053	5-239
Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-1-4873	5-242
Plan Battalion Redeployment	63-1-4874	5-246

4. General Situation.

a. The TMT battalion provides transportation services in support of Corps CSS operations. The TMT battalion commander is the brigade and/or group transportation manager for motor transportation companies and support units. The headquarters staff is charged with supervision of strategic deployment of subordinate elements to a new theater of operations and the relocation and establishment of bases and facilities in a new area. The commander is also responsible for coordinating logistics and combat health services support for the battalion and attached/assigned units, force protection activities, and strategic redeployment to home station. The TMT battalion has been alert for deployment to a potentially hostile country. The battalion will deploy by air and sea. OPFOR is capable of inflicting Levels I II/III attacks and employing weapons of mass destruction at sea and aerial ports of debarkation, staging, and marshaling areas, and along main supply routes. The battalion will be prepared for OPFOR activities during RSO&I operations. While establishing the battalion bases and facilities the battalion must still provide transportation services. The battalion staff will be prepared to supervise force protection for threat activity during movement, establishment of battalion operating site, and during operations. Higher HQ will provide guidance to the battalion when Level I, II/III threat is anticipated. Upon notification of a Level II/III attack, the battalion will cease operation and the staff and key personnel will supervise force protection activities. Force protection activities will continue until higher HQ coordinates battle hand over to military police or a tactical combat force and the hand over has been complete.

b. This exercise is also conducted under all day and night environmental conditions. The battalion will operate under threat of NBC, by ground or air attack, indirect fire, and electronic warfare.

c. This exercise is also conducted under threat of Level I, II, or III attack, or during NBC operations.

Table 4-3. Sample TMT Battalion FTX C-A scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	
1.	Receive and Verify Warning Order	10 min
2.	Direct Deployment Alert Activities	10 min
3.	Establish the Emergency Operation Center	2 hr
4.	Operate Emergency Operations Center	10 hr
5.	Supervise Battalion Deployment Activities	3 hr
6.	Coordinate Soldiers Readiness Program (SRP) Support	3 hr
7.	Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Support	4 hr
8.	Coordinate Family Assistance Plan	2 hr
9.	Coordinate Deployment Training Support	2 hr
10.	Perform deployment Intelligence Support functions	2 hr
11.	Provide Deployment Logistics Support	8 hr
12.	Update Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
13.	Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	2 hr
14.	Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	2 hr
15.	Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	4 hr
16.	AAR	1 hr
	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	
17.	Coordinate Relocation of Subordinate Elements	2 hr
18.	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements	2 hr
19.	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	4 hr
20.	Coordinate Onward Movement	1 hr
21.	Supervise Road March	30 min
22.	Threat Interdictions	40 min
23.	Continue Road March	30 min
24.	AAR	1 hr
	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	
25.	Cross Release Points	10 min
26.	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	4 hr
27.	Establish Battalion Command Post	2 hr
28.	Supervise Establishment of Battalion HQ and Battalion's Area	6 hr
29.	AAR	1 hr
	Direct Transportation Support	
30.	Conduct Mission Analysis	1 hr
31.	Develop Staff Estimates	1 hr
32.	Prepare Operations Order/Plan and Annexes	1 hr
33.	AAR	1 hr
34.	Provide Transportation Services	8 hr
35.	Threat Interdictions	30 min
36.	AAR	1 hr

Table 4-3. Sample TMT Battalion FTX C-A scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Force Protection	
38.	Threat Interdictions	30 min
38.	Level II/III Attacks	30 min
39.	Defense Responses	30 min
40.	Damage Assessment	2 hr
41.	Restoration of Support	2 hr
42.	AAR	1 hr
	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station	
43.	Receive Warning Order for Redeployment	10 min
44.	Coordinate Reconstitution of the TMT Battalion for Redeployment	2 hr
45.	Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
46.	Supervise Battalion Redeployment Activities	2 hr
47.	Provide Redeployment Support	2 hr
48.	Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	2 hr
49.	Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	2 hr
50.	Coordinate Home Station Activities	2 hr
51.	Final AAR	2 hr
	Total Time:	96 hr, 30 min

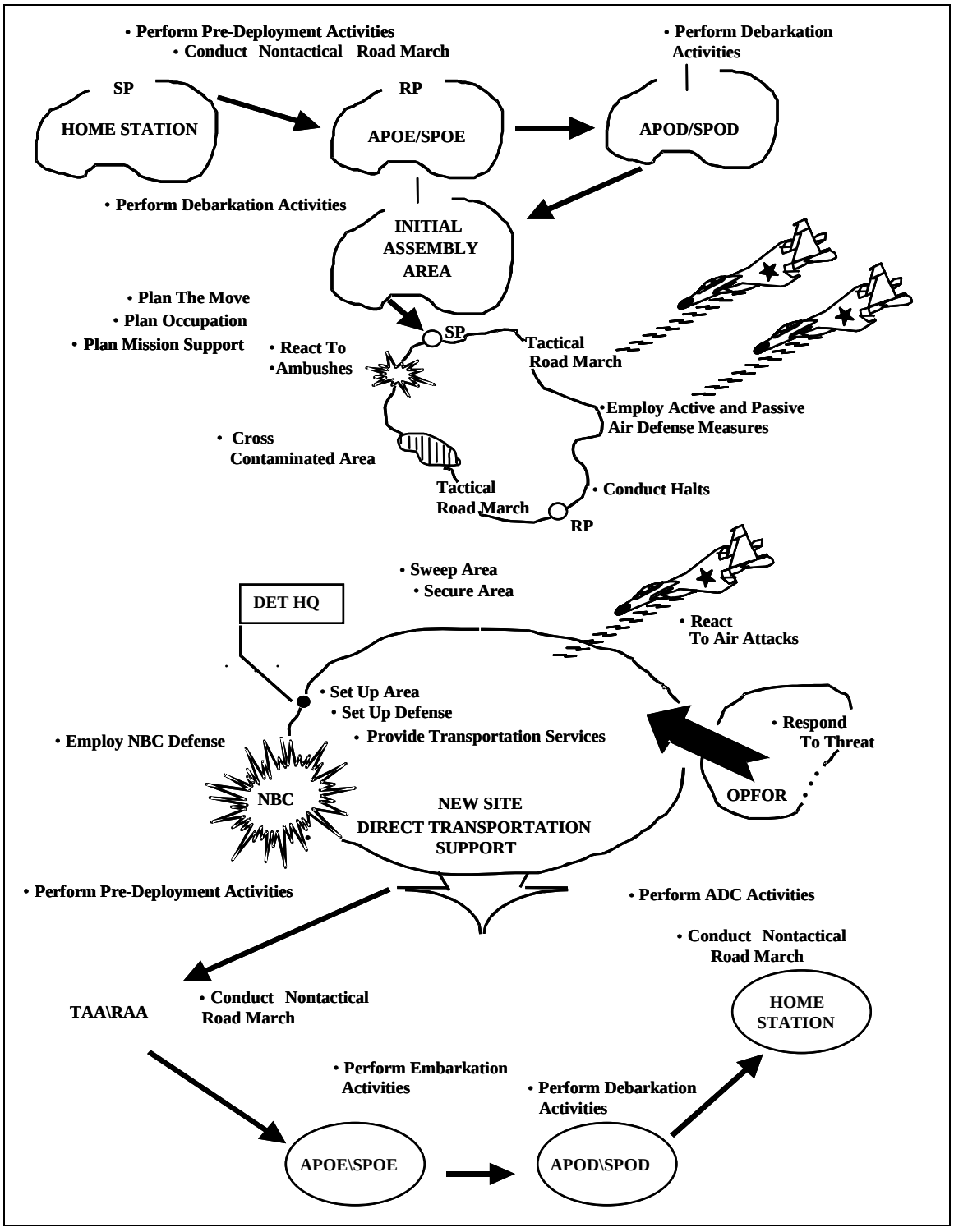


Figure 4-1. General scenario illustration

5. Special Situation. The battalion commander has issues the following warning order:

"We will deploy to a new theater of operations to provide transportation services. Begin your planning process for deploying the battalion and subordinate elements, relocating the battalion to _____ grid coordinates, establishing the battalion area of operations, provide transportation support and supervising force protection. This exercise will begin with receipt of this warning order and ends on notification from me to redeploy to home station."

6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers/Evaluators. The TMT battalion commander or XO will be the trainer and also the primary evaluator. If possible, there should be an evaluator with each staff section. At least one other evaluator is required with the OPFOR.

b. Vehicles/Communications. Communications equipment is needed for each controller/evaluator and the primary trainer. Radios are required for OPFOR vehicles during operations. Each controller/evaluator reports directly to the primary trainer.

c. Opposing Force. An OPFOR platoon (+) and one aircraft are required for the exercise for Level II threat activities. The OPFOR should be well trained in patrolling, assault, and guerrilla tactics. The OPFOR should have specific missions in the battalion area.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have a training area with minimum dimension of 1.5 by 1.5 kilometers. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 10 kilometers.

e. Master Incident List. During the FTX, MIL items should be continually fed into proper channels. Input from battalion staff and OPFOR causes response from the sections. A major purpose of this FTX is to drive battalion and subordinate elements to a simulated combat level of support requirements.

f. Using Units. In order to perform this exercise, support units must be in the field requesting transport of supplies, equipment, and personnel.

g. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-4 shows the support needed to successfully complete this FTX.

Table 4-4. Sample consolidated support requirements, FTX C-A

AMMUNITION	**QUANTITY**
5.56-mm SAW (blank)	600 rounds/wpn
5.56-mm (blank)	120 rounds/wpn
7.62-mm (blank)	400 rounds/wpn
40-mm (blank)	768 rounds/wpn
.45 cal/M9 (blank)	30 rounds/wpn
.50 cal (blank	400 rounds/wpn
Blank adapter	1 set/wpn
MILES	1 set/wpn
Smoke grenades	4 section
OPFOR	
Simulators, hand grenades	2 per man
Simulators, hand grenades	10 OPFOR
ATWESS	2 per LAW
Claymores (tng)	4-6 section
Simulators, arty	10 trainer/evaluator
Simulators, booby trap	10 section
Simulators, arty	10 OPFOR
FUEL	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
AN/ODR-TI (Radiac set)	1 each
M72A2 Chemical Stimulant	2 each
CS Grenades	4 each
IM 174 PD Radiac meter	5 each
IM 93/UD Dosimeter	13 each
OTHER	
Meals	3 per man, per day
War wound moulage set	1 each
Aircraft for simulated air attack	1 each
Fire Marker Control System	(when available)
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined in this FTX are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of these items in the suggested amount.	

TRANSPORTATION MOTOR TRANSPORT BATTALION

STX C-1

SUPERVISE DEPLOYMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS TO NEW THEATER OF OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This STX trains the TMT battalion commander, staff, and key personnel in supervising deployment of battalion and subordinate elements to a new theater of operations. This STX also provides the commander and key personnel with practice in planning; controlling and coordinating subordinate elements deployment activities. The TMT battalion must become proficient in planning, preparing and supervising deployment activities.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the TMT Battalion FTX, Provide Transportation Services.

b. This STX supports the Transportation Composite Group STX, Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and implement deployment (land, sea, or air) of the TMT battalion as a part of an FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 55-9, 55-10, 55-12, 55-65, and 100-17; and ARs 220-10, 700-84, and 750-1 should be discussed and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) The leader should use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.

(4) CPX, CFX, and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STXs is used.

(5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing deployment operations.

(b) Leaders should review the battalion and higher echelon deployment SOPs.

(c) Leaders should conduct a reconnaissance of the training area where deployment activities will take place, if possible.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the TMT battalion demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) Inclement weather.

(b) Various battalion category levels.

(c) Different mode of transportation.

(d) With or without OPFOR interdiction.

(e) Day or night.

(f) Movement over single or multiple routes.

(2) The TMT battalion must become proficient in the basics of planning and executing deployment before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the battalion sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The TMT battalion commander, in coordination with higher echelon command, secures deployment SOPs and reviews deployment outload team rosters.

b. Subordinate commanders updates unit deployment plans in coordination with TMT battalion and installation support elements.

c. The higher echelon S2/S3 provides battalion with the deployment sequence.

d. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e. This exercise begins with receipt of a deployment warning order and ends when TMT battalion arrives at the theater of operations. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-5, page 4-17. Table 4-5 is a suggested scenario.

5. General Situation.

a. The TMT battalion is currently at home station or mobilization site. The TMT battalion will deploy as part of a higher element to a new area of operations

b. The headquarter detachment and unit commander’s UMO and NCOs provides detachment and unit movement data.

c. The installation provides required deployment support.

d. The APODs, SPODs, and OCONUS locations are identified.

e. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

6. FRAGO. The TMT battalion commander issues the following FRAGO: "We have been alerted to deploy to OCONUS as part of a higher element. New OCONUS location is the vicinity of _____grid coordinates. Begin your planning process to prepare for deployment within _____hours. I will conduct an AAR after the conclusion of this FTX."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the TMT commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. Because of the intricate steps of deployment, a minimum of one OC per staff section is required. The trainers and OCs monitor and evaluate accuracy of the data, the soundness of planning and recommendations, and the thoroughness o coordination.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) The OPFOR may or may not be required when exercise is conducted as part of a CPX. The OPFOR should be used if exercise is part of an FTX.

(2) The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the TMT battalion are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio for the OCs are needed.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have an adequate training area that is 1.5 by 1.5 kilometers for deployment. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 25 kilometers.

e. Master Incident List. During this STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive battalion actions.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-6, page 4-18, shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-5. Sample TMT battalion STX C-1 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	
1.	Receive and Verify Warning Order	10 min
2.	Direct Deployment Alert Activities	10 min
3.	Establish the Emergency Operation Center	2 hr
4.	Operate Emergency Operations Center	10 hr
5.	Supervise Battalion Deployment Activities	3 hr
6.	Coordinate Soldiers Readiness Program (SRP) Support	3 hr
7.	Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Support	4 hr
8.	Coordinate Family Assistance Plan	2 hr
9.	Coordinate Deployment Training Support	2 hr
10.	Perform deployment Intelligence Support functions	2 hr
11.	Provide Deployment Logistics Support	8 hr
12.	Update Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
13.	Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	2 hr
14.	Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	2 hr
15.	Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	4 hr
16.	AAR	1 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	36 hr, 30 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the battalion.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

Table 4-6. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-1

AMMUNITION	**QUANTITY**
5.56mm SAW (blank)	600 rounds/wpn
5.56mm (blank)	120 rounds/wpn
7.62mm (blank)	400 rounds/wpn
40mm (blank)	768 rounds/wpn
M9mm (blank)	30 rounds/wpn
Blank adapter	1 set/wpn
MILES	1 set/wpn
Smoke grenades	4 per section 2 per OPFOR
Simulators, hand grenades	2 per man
Simulators, hand grenades	10 per OPFOR
ATWESS	2 per LAW
EQUIPMENT	
All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA authorized. Rail and aircraft load simulations.	
FUEL	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.	

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-7 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-7. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-1

TASK TITLE	**TASK NUMBER**	**PAGE**
Direct Deployment Alert Activities	63-1-4850	5-26
Establish the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4851	5-29
Operate the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4852	5-32
Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities	63-1-4853	5-35
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4854	5-40
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	63-1-4855	5-43

Table 4-7. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-1 (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Provide Deployment Human Resources Support	63-1-4856	5-46
Coordinate Family Assistance Support	63-1-4857	5-50
Coordinate Deployment Training Support	63-1-4858	5-53
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	63-1-4859	5-55
Provide Deployment Logistics Support	63-1-4860	5-58
Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	63-1-4861	5-64
Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	63-1-4863	5-71
Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	63-1-4864	5-74
Direct Integration Activities	63-1-4871	5-98
Plan Battalion Deployment in a Peacetime Environment	63-1-4872	5-101
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	16-1-1001.63	5-115
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-128
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-131
Plan Rear Operations	63-1-4014	5-203
Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-1-4873	5-242

TRANSPORTATION MOTOR TRANSPORT BATTALION

STX C-2

SUPERVISE RELOCATION OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS AND SUSTAINMENT RESOURCES

1. Objective. This STX trains the battalion commander, staff, and key leaders with practice in planning, coordinating, and relocating of subordinate elements and sustainment resources. The staff must become proficient in selecting routes, directing reconnaissance and advance/quartering party operations, coordinating required support for the move, monitoring the movement of subordinate elements, and providing transportation services for CSS operations. This STX combines the elements of column formations, movement control, situation awareness, communication, and defense procedures necessary to accomplish relocation to a new operation site.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the TMT battalion FTX, Provide Transportation Services.

b. This STX supports Transportation Composite Group STX, Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements Bases and Sustainment Resources.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and implement movement of the TMT battalion as part of a CPX or FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and responsibilities and procedures outlined in FM 55-30 and FM 7-20 should be discussed, and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when the exact STX area is used.

(4) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing movement.

(b) The battalion and higher HQ TSOP should be reviewed.

(c) A map/route reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area where the battalion will relocate.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the TMT battalion demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) Elements moving over single or multiple routes.

(b) With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(c) With or without NBC environment.

(d) Day or night.

(e) Single or multiple lift move.

(2) The staff must become proficient in the basics of planning and conducting the movement and relocation of the battalion before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the battalion sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The TMT battalion commander provides transportation services based on the Corps support group, TRANSCOM, or Transportation Composite Groups guidance, type of operations, or his judgment. The enemy situation will affect the force protection requirements.

b. The staff sections plan the move and prepare the movement order/annex. The TMT S2/3 section leads this task with input from other staff leaders.

c. Staff recommendations are provided in hard copy to the S2/3.

d. The TMT battalion should be able to relocate at least once every 5 days as a standard capability.

e. This exercise begins with the assignment responsibility for the movement annex and ends when the last subordinate unit has crossed the RP. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-8, page 4-22. Table 4-8 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-8. Sample TMT battalion STX C-2 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	
1.	Coordinate Relocation of Subordinate Elements	2 hr
2.	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements	2 hr
3.	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	4 hr
4.	Coordinate Onward Movement	1 hr
5.	Supervise Road March	30 min
6.	Threat Interdictions	40 min
7.	Continue Road March	30 min
8.	AAR	1 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	11 hr, 40 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the TMT battalion.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

5. General Situation.

a. The TMT battalion has arrived at the new theater of operations and has assembled the battalion equipment in the initial assembly area. Upon receipt of a movement order, the battalion will relocate to a new operating site.

b. Pertinent maps and engineer overlays are available.

c. Route reconnaissance will be performed by staff leaders and unit commanders.

d. The OPFOR is capable of launching air or ground attacks, employing NBC agents, and engaging in EW.

e. Major deviation(s) from the movement plan may occur.

f. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

6. FRAGO. The TMT battalion commander is conducting a meeting with his staff and key leaders. The following guidance is given:

a. Higher headquarters has prescribed a route. I want the S2/3 and key leaders to conduct a map, aerial or ground reconnaissance to identify critical points, checkpoints, SP, RP, and halt sites, and potential ambush sites. The S2/3 will then prepared the movement annex/order. The S2/3 and key leaders will then organize the battalion and subordinate elements for move.

b. The battalion will relocate to _____grid coordinates. Radio communication will only be use when necessary and be brief. The enemy has the capability to interdict our convoy movements along the entire MSR. Maintain march discipline and proper distance between battalion convoys and serials. Prepare your unit for immediate action drill in case of ambush and

report to me any enemy activity or any other activity that impedes the progress of the battalion. Uniform for all subordinate elements is MOPP2.

7. Special Situation. Higher HQ states that the MSR has been hit with chemical contamination at _____grid coordinates, intelligence reports also states that enemy activity has been observed in or around the vicinity. Reroute the convoy if time permits; if not, stay on MSR and proceed with caution."

8. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers/OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the TMT battalion commander and XO as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) OPFOR may or may not be required when the exercise is conducted as part of a CPX. OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of an FTX.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled when used.

(3) MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to the battalion.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the battalion are used. When an OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio are needed for the OC.

d. Maneuver Area. A training area of sufficient size, approximately 250 by 250 meters, is needed to support the number of vehicles and equipment in the battalion. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 20 kilometers. Vegetation and terrain should allow cover and concealment for facilities, vehicles, and equipment.

e. Master Incident List. During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive battalion actions.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-9, page 4-24, shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-9. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-2

AMMUNITION	**QUANTITY**
5.56mm (Blank)	120 rds/per wpn
7.62mm (Blank)	100 rds/per wpn
Smoke Grenades	4/per section/OPFOR
Arty Simulator	4/per OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier/equipment
EQUIPMENT	
All equipment organic to each battalion to include TOE and CTA authorized.	
FUEL	**QUANTITY**
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	1 per section
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant	1 each
CS Grenades	4/per OPFOR
OTHER	
Field rations	as required
War Wound Moulage Set	1 each
Aircraft for simulated air attack	1 each
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all of the items in this table.	

9. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-10 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-10. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-2

TASK TITLE	**TASK NUMBER**	**PAGE**
Provide Intelligence Support	63-1-4051	5-6
Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-1-4015	5-9
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	63-1-4018	5-17
Coordinate Onward Movement	63-1-4862	5-67
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-1-4038	5-105
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-1-4040	5-108

Table 4-10. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-2 (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	16-1-1001.63	5-115
Provide Human Resources Support - Administrative Services	63-1-4043	5-124
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-128
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-131
Conduct Mission Analysis	63-1-4001	5-151
Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield	63-1-4002	5-155
Formulate Feasible Courses of Action	63-1-4003	5-159
Develop Intelligence Estimate	63-1-4004	5-162
Develop Personnel Estimate	63-1-4005	5-166
Develop Logistics Estimate	63-1-4006	5-170
Develop Support Operations Estimate	63-1-4007	5-174
Develop Supporting Commander's (Operations) Estimate	63-1-4008	5-178
Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order and Annexes	63-1-4009	5-184
Develop Road Movement Order	63-1-4010	5-189
Develop Occupation Plan	63-1-4011	5-196
Plan Battalion Area Tactical Operations	63-1-4012	5-200
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-229

TRANSPORTATION MOTOR TRANSPORT BATTALION

STX C-3

SUPERVISE ESTABLISHMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS AND FACLITIES

1. Objective. This STX is designed to trains the transportation motor transport battalion commander, staff, and key members in planning, coordinating, and supervising establishment of battalion and subordinate elements and facilities. The staff and key leaders must become proficient in planning occupation of the new area, coordinating advance/quartering party activities; supervising the subordinate elements, base, and facilities; establishing and maintaining communications with subordinate elements and force protection. This STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and supervising the functions necessary to occupy, develop, and defend the area.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the TMT battalion FTX, Provide Transportation Services.

b. This STX supports Transportation Composite Group STX, Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements Bases and Facilities.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to establish the battalion and subordinate elements area as a part of a CPX or an FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP, the responsibilities and procedures outlined in the FM 3-3, FM 7-8, FM 19-4, FM 44-8, and FM 55-30 should be discussed; and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) Leaders should use a map of the actual area where the STX is to be conducted, and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.

(4) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for setting up your type battalion AO.

(b) Higher HQ and battalions TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c) If possible, leaders should conduct a reconnaissance of the training area where setup will take place.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the TMT battalion demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(b) With or without NBC conditions.

(c) In a field or MOUT environment.

(2) The staff must become proficient in doctrine and basic of planning and supervising the establishment of the battalion area of operations and implementing force protection activities before attempting complex operations.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the TMT battalion sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The TMT battalion commander provides planning guidance based upon higher HQ guidance or based upon his own judgment. The type of operations determines the degree of the permanency that will be accomplished. The enemy situation will affect force protection requirements. The TMT battalion must be prepared at all times to defend against air, ground, or terrorist attacks during day or night, and respond appropriately to enemy or friendly NBC operations.

b. The staff section develops base facilities layout plans, force protection, and supervise their implementation. The S2/3 is the proponent for these supporting missions with input from the staff sections. The detachment HQ establishes the new operation site IAW the TMT battalion and higher HQ operational plans. When the site is operational, higher HQ is notified that the TMT battalion is prepared to perform its operational missions.

c. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d. In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used.

(1) Did the occupation plan conform to the commander’s guidance?

(2) Did the detachment and unit’s implement the occupation plan properly?

e. Deficiencies identified in (1) above should be traced to staff weakness. Those identified in (2) above are the subordinate’s elements weakness. If the plan is satisfactory, but the subordinate elements execution is poor, then more frequent establishment during FTX or detachment and units level STX are required.

f. This exercise begins when the battalion advance/quartering party arrives at the new site and ends when the battalion and subordinate element bases and facilities are established. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-11, page 4-28. Table 4-11 is a suggested scenario.

5. General Situation.

a. The advance/quartering party has performed preliminary security and organization of the new site.

b. Pertinent maps and overlays are available.

c. The new AO may be a field or MOUT environment.

d. The staff sections have formulated a tentative layout and defensive plan.

e. The OPFOR is capable of launching air and ground attacks and engaging in NBC warfare and EW.

f. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

Table 4-11. TMT battalion STX C-3 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	
1.	Cross Release Points	10 min
2.	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	4 hr
3.	Establish Battalion Command Post	2 hr
4.	Supervise Establishment of Battalion HQ and Battalion's Area	6 hr
5.	AAR	1 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	13 hr, 10 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

6. Special Situation. The TMT battalion commander is conducting a meeting with his staff and key leaders. The following guidance is given.

"Begin establishing TMT battalion bases and facilities. We will provide command and control, planning and supervision of attached motor transport companies and attach units from this location. I want the TMT battalion area of operations set up and operational immediately, followed by administrative and bivouac areas. The enemy is capable of mounting aerial and ground attacks and is also capable of bringing direct and indirect fire upon us. Have all subordinate elements use cover and concealment to mask our activities and strictly enforce light and noise discipline. Have them place LP's and OP's far enough out to give adequate warning. Uniform remains MOPP2 for all assigned and attached personnel based on reports of enemy treat capabilities."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the unit commander as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

b. OPFOR.

(1) The OPFOR should not be more than squad size with one crew-served weapon.

(2) The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

(3) The OPFOR should be well-trained in threat tactics, have specific missions, and be controlled when used.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, vehicles and radios for the OCs are needed.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have an adequate training area that is 1.5 by 1.5 kilometers.

e. Master Incident List. During the STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive actions.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-12, page 4-30, shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-12. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-3

AMMUNITION	**QUANTITY**
5.56mm (Blank)	30 rds/wpn
5.56mm (Blank)	50 rds/wpn OPFOR
7.62mm (Blank)	100 rds/wpn
7.62mm (Blank)	250 rds/wpn OPFOR
Smoke Grenades	8 each OPFOR
Arty Simulator	4 each OPFOR
CS Grenade	4 each OPFOR
Blank Adapter	1 per wpn
Blank Adapter	1 per wpn OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier
MILES	1 set per soldier OPFOR
EQUIPMENT	
All authorized organic equipment to include TOE and CTA.	
FUEL	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
AN/ODR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	
M72A2 Chemical Stimulant	2 each
CS Grenades (Practice)	4 each
OTHER	
Meals	Based on ration cycle
War Wound Moulage Set	1 each
Aircraft for Simulated Air Attack	1 each
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.	

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-13 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-13. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-3

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-1-4015	5-9
Establish Battalion Command Post (Forward)	63-1-4016	5-14
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion Headquarters	63-1-4019	5-20
Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center (LOC)	63-1-4020	5-23
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-1-4038	5-105
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-1-4040	5-108
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	16-1-1001.63	5-115
Provide Human Resources Support - Administrative Services	63-1-4043	5-124
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-128
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-131
Plan Battalion Area Tactical Operations	63-1-4012	5-200
Establish Communications	63-1-4017	5-208
Maintain Communications	63-1-4041	5-223
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-229

TRANSPORTATION MOTOR TRANSPORT BATTALION

STX C-4

DIRECT TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT

1. Objective. This STX is designed to train the TMT battalion commander, staff, and key members in the following areas: establishing situational awareness; plans for accomplishing the expeditious movement of personnel, cargo, and equipment; coordination for external support; maintain visibility of all employed battalion assets and personnel, and command and control of subordinate units. The staff must become proficient in motor transport planning; operations and management; coordinating transportation support; planning and directing the utilization of equipment (to include maintenance, safety, routing, coordination with, and utilization of host nation assets and road network); intelligence; supervising OPSEC; force protection operations; and providing personnel service, logistics, administrative, and religious support. This STX combines the elements of transportation management, coordination, and supervising necessary to direct transportation support.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the TMT battalion FTX, Provide Transportation Services.

b. This STX supports the Transportation Composite Group STX, Provide Transportation Services.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to direct transportation support as a part of a CPX or an FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and responsibilities and procedures in FM 3-3, FM 7-8, FM 19-4, FM 44-8, and FM 55-30 should be discussed; and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide the staff the training to teach team work and proper preparation of estimates and orders.

(4) Games and simulations are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They also are used to exercise command and control at various command and staff levels.

(5) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and planning transportation support.

(b) The battalion and higher echelon TSOP should be reviewed.

(c) A map/route reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the TMT battalion demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) In a field or MOUT environment.

(b) With or without NBC conditions.

(c) Day or night.

(d) With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(2) The trainer must become proficient in the doctrine and the basics of transportation support before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the TMT battalion sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The TMT battalion commander provides planning guidance based upon higher HQ concept of operations or based upon his own judgment. The type of operations determines the scheme and priorities of support.

b. Coordination of support operations is found in appropriate publications.

c. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations are provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d. This exercise begins when the battalion receives commitments from higher HQ and ends when commitments are completed. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-14, page 4-34. Table 4-14 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-14. Sample TMT battalion STX C-4 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Direct Transportation Support	
1.	Conduct Mission Analysis	1 hr
2.	Develop Staff Estimates	1 hr
3.	Prepare Operations Order/Plan and Annexes	1 hr
4.	AAR	1 hr
5.	Provide Transportation Services	8 hr
6.	Threat Interdictions	30 min
7.	AAR	1 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	13 hr, 30 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

5. General Situation.

a. The TMT battalion has established its new operating site. The TMT battalion mission is to direct transportation support.

b. Higher HQ and battalion OPLAN/ORORD are available.

c. Intelligence information on the tactical situation is disseminated from higher HQ to the TMT battalion. The TMT battalion implements OPSEC measures.

d. Sufficient supplies and equipment are available.

e. Exercise is conducted in a field site or MOUT environment.

f. The OPFOR may be conventional or unconventional forces and is capable of intelligence gathering. The OPSEC program is a passive defensive measure. Local security is maintained by using OPSEC countermeasures.

g. The OPFOR can launch air, ground, and/or NBC attacks. Isolated NBC incidents have occurred. OPFOR is capable of conducting EW.

h. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

6. Special Situation. The TMT commander issues the following guidance to his staff and key leaders:

"We are receiving transportation request from higher HQ, MCB and/or MCT for transportation support. The battalion operation section will screen and consolidate requests to determine the number and type vehicles needed to meet operational requirements. The S2/3 will then direct the subordinate units to provide transportation support and maintain visibility of all employed battalion assets and personnel. I want to be updated on the status of support as soon as you encounter problems or there is a break in operations."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers/OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the TMT commander or XO as the senior internal evaluator. If the STX is conducted for the TMT battalion headquarters staff, then one evaluator per staff section.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) The OPFOR is not required when the exercise is a CPX. The OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of an FTX.

(2) The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to the battalion.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio are needed for the OC.

d. Maneuver Area. A training area of sufficient size, approximately 250 by 250 meters, is required to support the vehicles and equipment.

e. Master Incident List. During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive unit actions.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-15, page 4-36, shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-15. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-4

AMMUNITION	**QUANTITY**
5.56 mm (Blank)	120 rds/per wpn
7.62 mm (Blank)	100 rds/per wpn
Smoke Grenades	4/per unit/OPFOR
Arty Simulator	4/per OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier/equipment
Blank Adapters	1 per wpn
EQUIPMENT	
All organic equipment including TOE and CTA items authorized.	
FUEL	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	**QUANTITY**
AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	1 per unit
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant	1 each
CS Grenades	4/per OPFOR
OTHER	
Field rations	as required
War Wound Moulage Set	1 each
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all the items in this table.	

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-16 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-16. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-4

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-1-4038	5-105
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-1-4040	5-108
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	16-1-1001.63	5-115
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-1-4025	5-119
Provide Human Resources Support - Administrative Services	63-1-4043	5-124
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-128
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-131
Supervise Establishment of Truck Terminal or Trailer Transfer Point	55-1-0015	5-134
Prepare for Battalion Transportation Support Activities	55-1-0016	5-137
Coordinate Transportation Support	55-1-0017	5-142
Supervise Truck Terminal/Trailer Transfer Point Operations	55-1-0021	5-145
Conduct Mission Analysis	63-1-4001	5-151
Operate the Support Area of Logistics Operations Center	63-1-4022	5-213
Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-1-4037	5-219
Maintain Communications	63-1-4041	5-223
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-229
Operate Base Cluster Operations Center	63-1-4050	5-232

TRANSPORTATION MOTOR TRANSPORT BATTALION

STX C-5

SUPERVISE FORCE PROTECTION ACTIVITIES

1. Objective. This STX trains the TMT commander, staff, and key leaders in planning, coordinating, and command and control of force protection activities of the TMT battalion area. The staff must become proficient in planning force protection activities, establishing and coordinating area defense, operating the base operations center, and directing responses to the area's threat. The STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and directing procedures necessary to accomplish force protection.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the TMT battalion FTX, Provide Transportation Services.

b. This STX supports the Transportation Composite Group STX, Coordinate Force Protection Activities.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and conduct TMT battalion defensive operations as a part of a CPX or an FTX.

(2) Classroom activities will cover the TMT battalion TSOP and responsibilities and procedures outlined in the T&EOs in this STX. The trainer should emphasize the following items:

(a) Implementation of defensive plan.

(b) Proper use of weapons.

(c) Maneuver and fires.

(d) Indirect fire and CAS calling procedures.

(e) Withdrawal.

(f) NBC defense procedures.

(g) Hasty displacement procedures.

(h) ADC procedures.

(3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STX is used.

(4) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing TMT battalion defense.

(b) Higher HQ and TMT battalion TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c) If possible, leaders should conduct a map/ground reconnaissance of the training area.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the TMT battalion has demonstrates proficiency in the tasks for this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) With or without NBC conditions.

(b) Day or night.

(c) In a field or MOUT environment.

(2) The TMT battalion must become proficient in the basics of planning and conducting TMT battalion defensive before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the TMT battalion sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The TMT battalion must be prepared at any time to defend against air, ground, or threat attacks during daylight or darkness and is prepared to respond appropriately to enemy or friendly chemical or nuclear operations.

b. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

c. This exercise begins when the TMT battalion receives notification of an attack and ends after the battalion completes ADC operations. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-17, page 4-40. Table 4-17 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-17. Sample TMT battalion STX C-5 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Force Protection	
1.	Threat Interdictions	30 min
2.	Level II/III Attacks	30 min
3.	Defense Responses	30 min
4.	Damage Assessment	2 hr
5.	Restoration of Support	2 hr
6.	AAR	1 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	6 hr, 30 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

5. General Situation.

a. The TMT battalion has established its defensive positions as part of a base cluster and has received notification of a Level II/III attack. The OPFOR has infiltrated or airdropped a platoon size or larger force in the area to seek out command and control support facilities to disrupt friendly battle sustaintment.

b. Higher HQ and battalion TSOPs and OPORD with rear annex are available.

c. The TMT battalion defense have been established.

d. Rear operations communications system has been established.

e. This exercise is conducted under all day and night environmental conditions.

f. The OPFOR has the potential to conduct ground, air, and NBC warfare.

6. FRAGO. The TMT battalion commander issues the following FRAGO: "A Level II/III attack is imminent. Cease operations and implement battalion defense plan. Prepare for threat engagement within 30 minutes. Further information will be disseminated as the exercise develops."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the TMT battalion commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

b. OPFOR.

(1) The OPFOR should not be more than squad size with two crew-served weapon. The OPFOR should have specific mission and be controlled when used.

(2) The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

(3) The OPFOR should be well-trained in threat tactics, have specific missions, and be controlled when used.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. When OPFOR is employed, vehicles and radios for the OCs are needed.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have an adequate training area, which is 1.5 by 1.5 kilometers.

e. Master Incident List. During the STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive actions.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-18, page 4-42, shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-18. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-5

AMMUNITION	**QUANTITY**
5.56mm (Blank)	30 rds/wpn
5.56mm (Blank)	50 rds/wpn OPFOR
7.62mm (Blank)	100 rds/wpn
7.62mm (Blank)	250 rds/wpn OPFOR
Smoke Grenades	8 each OPFOR
Arty Simulator	4 each OPFOR
CS Grenade	4 each OPFOR
Blank Adapter	1 per wpn
Blank Adapter	1 per wpn OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier
MILES	1 set per soldier OPFOR
EQUIPMENT	
All authorized organic equipment to include TOE and CTA.	
FUEL	**QUANTITY**
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	
AN/ODR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	
M72A2 Chemical Stimulant	2 each
CS Grenades (Practice)	4 each
OTHER	
Meals	Based on ration cycle
War Wound Moulage Set	1each
Aircraft for Simulated Air Attack	1 each
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended As suggestions. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.	

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-19 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-19. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-5

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Provide Intelligence Support	63-1-4051	5-6
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-1-4038	5-105
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-1-4040	5-108
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	16-1-1001.63	5-115
Provide Human Resources Support - Administrative Services	63-1-4043	5-124
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-128
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-131
Maintain Communications	63-1-4041	5-223
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-229
Direct Response to Threat Actions	63-1-4052	5-235
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-1-4053	5-239

TRANSPORTATION MOTOR TRANSPORT BATTALION

STX C-6

SUPERVISE REDEPLOYMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS TO HOME STATION

1. Objective. This STX trains the TMT battalion commander, staff, and key members in supervising the redeployment of the battalion and subordinate elements from the theater of operations to home station or mobilization site. The TMT battalion commander, staff, and key members must become proficient in planning and preparing the battalion for redeployment operations.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the TMT battalion FTX, Provide Transportation Services.

b. This STX supports the Transportation Composite Group STX, Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and implement redeployment (land, sea, or air) of the unit as a part of an FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 55-9, 55-10, 55-12, 55-65, 90-26, and 100-17; ARs 220-10, 700-84, and 750-1 should be discussed and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) The leader should use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.

(4) CPX, CFX, and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STXs is used.

(5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing redeployment operations.

(b) Leaders should review the higher echelon and battalion SOPs.

(c) Leaders should conduct a map/ground reconnaissance of the training area where redeployment activities will take place, if possible.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the TMT battalion has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) Inclement weather.

(b) Multiple increments.

(c) Different mode of transportation.

(d) Day or night.

(2) The battalion must become proficient in the basics of planning and executing basic redeployment before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the TMT battalion sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The TMT battalion commander in coordination with the higher echelon secures required redeployment SOPs.

b. Detachment HQ Movement Officer/NCO updates battalion redeployment plans in coordination with higher echelon staff.

c. Higher HQ provides battalion with the redeployment sequence.

d. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e. This exercise begins with receipt of a warning order and ends upon completion of redeployment activities. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-20, page 4-46. Table 4-20 is a suggested scenario.

5. General Situation.

a. The battalion is employed in a theater of operations and is to be redeployed to CONUS. The battalion is under the command and control of a higher echelon element.

b. The TMT battalion staff section provide personnel and equipment status reports.

c. The base support elements provide required redeployment support.

d. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

Table 4-20. Sample TMT battalion STX C-6 scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station	
1.	Receive Warning Order for Redeployment	10 min
2.	Coordinate Reconstitution of the TMT Battalion for Redeployment	2 hr
3.	Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
4.	Supervise Battalion Redeployment Activities	2 hr
5.	Provide Redeployment Support	2 hr
6.	Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	2 hr
7.	Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	2 hr
8.	Coordinate Home Station Activities	2 hr
9.	Final AAR	2 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	15 hr, 10 min
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		

6. FRAGO. The TMT battalion commander issues the following FRAGO: "Alternative route A will be used for moving to TAA/RAA located at _____ (grid coordinates). Prepare to move within _____ hours."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the battalion commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

b. Opposing Force. None.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used.

d. Maneuver Area. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 25 kilometers.

e. Master Incident List. During this STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive unit actions.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-21 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-21. Sample consolidated support requirements for STX C-6

AMMUNITION	**QUANTITY**
	NONE
EQUIPMENT	
All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA authorized. Rail and aircraft load simulations.	
FUEL	
Multiply the pieces of equipment times the amount of fuel per mile or hour times the tentative operating mileage or hour.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	NONE
RATIONS	
NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.	

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-22 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-22. T&EOs from chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX C-6

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities	63-1-4853	5-35
Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment	63-1-4865	5-77
Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4866	5-80
Provide Redeployment Support	63-1-4867	5-83
Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	63-1-4868	5-88
Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	63-1-4869	5-91
Coordinate Home Station Activities	63-1-4870	5-94
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	16-1-1001.63	5-115
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-128
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-131
Plan Battalion Redeployment	63-1-4874	5-246

CHAPTER 5

TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

5-1. GENERAL. This chapter contains the T&EOs for all the collective tasks that the unit must perform in order to accomplish its critical wartime mission. The unit commander uses T&EOs for training and internally evaluating the unit. Higher HQ also uses the T&EOs to evaluate unit performance.

5-2. STRUCTURE. Table 5-1, pages 5-3 through 5-5, is a list of all the T&EOs in this MTP. The mission to collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific AUTL.

5-3. FORMAT. The T&EOs are the training objective prepared for every collective task that supports the critical wartime mission accomplishment. Each T&EOs contains the following components:

a. Element. The element identifies the unit or unit element that is required to perform the task.

b. Task. A task is an event that has a start and stop, is measurable, and supports a specific mission.

c. Task Number. The task number is in parentheses following the task title. This number is used to identify the task throughout the MTP.

d. References. The references for each task are in parentheses following the task number. The underlined reference is the primary reference. This reference contains the most information concerning the task.

e. Iteration. Iterations (1 through 5) are used to identify the number of times a task is performed and evaluated during training or an exercise. If the task has been performed more than once, the iteration will indicate the quality of the latest performance. The letter “M” stands for MOPP and will be circled by the evaluator if tasks are performed under MOPP conditions.

f. Training Status. The training status is used to record the evaluation of the unit’s ability to perform the task. The rating is circled each time the task is evaluated. The two ratings are:

(1) GO. The unit successfully performed all the task/task steps (subtasks) and standards with no significant shortcomings.

(2) NO GO. The unit failed to successfully accomplish the task/task steps (subtasks) and standards.

g. Conditions. The conditions statement of the T&EO describes the wartime environment under which the task is performed. The statement begins with an initiating cue which is an action taken by a unit or individual outside or within the unit. The cue acts as a catalyst to create the necessity to perform the task.

h. Task Standard. The task standard states the ultimate outcome criteria for the task.

i. Subtasks. Subtasks are actions or events that must take place for a task to be performed. The task steps are sequentially arranged where the performance sequence is important for the correct performance of the task.

NOTE: Leader task steps are identified by an asterisk ”*” placed to the left of the critical task step (subtask) symbol “+” which is placed at the immediate left of the task step (subtask) number. The individual and leader tasks that support the collective task are identified in parentheses at the end of the subtask.

j. Standards. Detailed standards are listed for each task step. The standard for the task step is the accomplishment of all event standards for the task step. For example, “a” through “h” (task steps) must be completed before the standard is met.

k. GO/NO GO Column. The GO/NO GO column is used to record the performance of the standards. Each standard for a task step must be evaluated and an “x” placed in the appropriate column. A major portion of the standards for a task step must be marked a “GO” for the task step to be successfully performed.

5-4. OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS. These tasks and standards provide overall OPFOR performance standards for selected collective tasks. These tasks and standards also ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using doctrine and tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-5. USAGE OF T&EO. The T&EO is used individually to train personnel in a single task. It is used in sequence with other T&EOs to train personnel in and/or evaluate a larger group of tasks, such as an FTX or STX. The T&EOs should be used through more than five iterations of evaluations, either by making copies or using pencil entries to record results.

Table 5-1. List of unit T&EOs

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Develop Intelligence		
Provide Intelligence Support	63-1-4051	5-6
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver		
Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-1-4015	5-9
Establish Battalion Command Post (Forward)	63-1-4016	5-14
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	63-1-4018	5-17
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion Headquarters	63-1-4019	5-20
Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center (LOC)	63-1-4020	5-23
Direct Deployment Alert Activities	63-1-4850	5-26
Establish the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4851	5-29
Operate the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4852	5-32
Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities	63-1-4853	5-35
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4854	5-40
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	63-1-4855	5-43
Provide Deployment Human Resources Support	63-1-4856	5-46
Coordinate Family Assistance Support	63-1-4857	5-50
Coordinate Deployment Training Support	63-1-4858	5-53
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	63-1-4859	5-55
Provide Deployment Logistics Support	63-1-4860	5-58
Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	63-1-4861	5-64
Coordinate Onward Movement	63-1-4862	5-67
Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	63-1-4863	5-71

Table 5-1. List of unit T&EOs (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	63-1-4864	5-74
Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment	63-1-4865	5-77
Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4866	5-80
Provide Redeployment Support	63-1-4867	5-83
Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	63-1-4868	5-88
Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	63-1-4869	5-91
Coordinate Home Station Activities	63-1-4870	5-94
Direct Integration Activities	63-1-4871	5-98
Plan Battalion Deployment in a Peacetime Environment	63-1-4872	5-101
Protect the Force		
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-1-4038	5-105
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-1-4040	5-108
Perform CSS and Sustainment		
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	16-1-1001.63	5-115
Coordinate Internal Logistics	63-1-4025	5-119
Provide Human Resources Support - Administrative Services	63-1-4043	5-124
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-128
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-131
Exercise Command and Control		
Supervise Establishment of Truck Terminal or Trailer Transfer Point	55-1-0015	5-134
Prepare for Battalion Transportation Support Activities	55-1-0016	5-137
Coordinate Transportation Support	55-1-0017	5-142
Supervise Truck Terminal/Trailer Transfer Point Operations	55-1-0021	5-145

Table 5-1. List of unit T&EOs (continued)

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Conduct Mission Analysis	63-1-4001	5-151
Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield	63-1-4002	5-155
Formulate Feasible Courses of Action	63-1-4003	5-159
Develop Intelligence Estimate	63-1-4004	5-162
Develop Personnel Estimate	63-1-4005	5-166
Develop Logistics Estimate	63-1-4006	5-170
Develop Support Operations Estimate	63-1-4007	5-174
Develop Supporting Commander's (Operations) Estimate	63-1-4008	5-178
Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order and Annexes	63-1-4009	5-184
Develop Road Movement Order	63-1-4010	5-189
Develop Occupation Plan	63-1-4011	5-196
Plan Battalion Area Tactical Operations	63-1-4012	5-200
Plan Rear Operations	63-1-4014	5-203
Establish Communications	63-1-4017	5-208
Operate the Support Area of Logistics Operations Center	63-1-4022	5-213
Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-1-4037	5-219
Maintain Communications	63-1-4041	5-223
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-229
Operate Base Cluster Operations Center	63-1-4050	5-232
Direct Response to Threat Actions	63-1-4052	5-235
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-1-4053	5-239
Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-1-4873	5-242
Plan Battalion Redeployment	63-1-4874	5-246

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Provide Intelligence Support (63-1-4051) (FM 34-1, AR 530-1, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 34-130, FM 34-54)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Support operations have commenced. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog devices. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Intelligence information on the tactical situation is disseminated from the higher HQ S2/3 Section and the supporting rear operations element. The commander, staff, and subordinate units require intelligence information for current operations and planning. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Intelligence is disseminated to appropriate agencies and elements IAW TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors decrease the processing and dissemination of intelligence information.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section identifies information requirements using analog and/or digital devices. a. Identifies current intelligence information requirements. b. Lists priority intelligence requirements. c. Lists current intelligence holdings shortcomings. 2. S2/3 Section assembles required intelligence information. a. Prepares information collection plan. b. Submits request for additional support to higher HQ S2/3 Section and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications. c. Revises collection plan to reflect current needs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
3. S2/3 Section disseminates intelligence. a. Verifies reports for relevancy, reliability, and accuracy. b. Records intelligence information in journal. c. Identifies significant effects of weather. d. Records pertinent weather data. e. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and digital communications. f. Annotates analog/digital situation map with current friendly and enemy locations. g. Prepares INTSUM. h. Disseminates INTSUM to appropriate agencies and elements using analog and digital communications. 4. S2/3 Section maintains classified information. a. Stores classified information IAW current OPSEC instructions, TSOP, and AR 190-13. b. Marks all classified information IAW TSOP and AR 190-13. c. Controls access to classified information. d. Enforces information security measures. e. Provides classified maps. f. Maintains emergency destruction instructions IAW AR 190-13 and TSOP. 5. S2/3 Section plans EPW handling. a. Coordinates handling and locations of holding areas with supporting MP element and higher HQ S2/3 Section. b. Monitors EPW handling operations to ensure compliance with the TSOP, OPORD, and the provisions of the Geneva Convention.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities (63-1-4015) (FM 101-5, AR 530-1, FM 10-27-2, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-3, FM 3-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Departure time for the advance/quartering parties has arrived. The advance/quartering parties are prepared to depart the assembly area. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion advance/quartering party leader is provided all essential information, to include the route, order of march, and ETA for the main body. The battalion advance/quartering party leader is issued tentative battalion area and CP layout, traffic circulation, and communications plans. The battalion advance/quartering party consists of an OIC; security, staff, and communications elements; and representatives from subordinate units. Sufficient guides, markers, and other equipment are available. Battalion advance/quartering party deploys in MOPP2. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack.

NOTE: If survey team(s) monitor high levels of contamination, the area should be evacuated immediately. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance/quartering party's movement is conducted IAW movement order. All new area preparation tasks as directed by the S2/3 are accomplished IAW TSOP and the OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section organizes battalion advance/quartering party. a. Provides required size of parties to subordinate units. b. Briefs party leaders IAW the TSOP. c. Dispatches party as prescribed in the movement order.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. Battalion advance/quartering party moves to new operating site. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications and MTS. b. Crosses SP, CPs, and the RP as prescribed in the movement order. c. Follows route prescribed in the movement order. d. Reports route changes, intelligence, and any other information to the main body by route guides, route markers, MTS, or analog and/or digital communications. e. Moves battalion advance/quartering party into a concealed, predesignated assembly area to await clearance of new area. *3. Battalion advance/quartering party leader supervises securing the new battalion area. a. Dispatches security element to sweep the area to locate mines, booby traps, or other signs of threat presence. b. Dispatches NBC survey and monitoring teams personnel to sweep assigned sectors. c. Places OP on probable avenues of approach consistent with personnel assets. d. Conducts area reconnaissance (mounted or dismounted) with subordinate elements' leaders pointing out general locations of each element. e. Moves entire party into the new area. f. Forwards closing report to main body, if possible, using MTS or analog and digital communications. 4. Battalion advance/quartering party secures the new battalion area. a. Dons protective mask before entering new area. b. Sweeps the area to locate mines, booby traps, or other signs of threat presence (security elements).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Surveys assigned areas for NBC contamination (Survey and Monitor Teams). d. Occupies OP on probable avenues of approach. e. Moves into new area as directed by the party leader. *5. Battalion advance/quartering party leader supervises area preparation. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS or analog and digital communications. b. Monitors movement of each subordinate unit's advance/quartering party into their respective areas to ensure compliance with layout plan and traffic circulation plans. c. Supervises implementation of hasty security plan to ensure that each element secures its individual area. d. Supervises implementation of communications plan in coordination with the communications representatives to ensure some type of communications exists between the CP and all subordinate units. e. Enforces OPSEC measures during preparation of subordinate units' areas. f. Tasks unit representatives to block all other possible entrance and exit points with available materials. 6. Battalion advance/quartering party implements tentative battalion layout and circulation plan. a. Marks battalion traffic pattern IAW layout plan. b. Establishes entrance/exit points to all subordinate units' locations. c. Constructs obstructions to block all other possible entrance and exit points. d. Forwards plan to battalion HQ using analog and digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
7. Battalion advance/quartering party implements hasty security plan. a. Prepares battalion hasty defensive sketch. b. Enforces camouflage and concealment measures. c. Identifies locations for emplacement of emergency alarm devices. 8. Battalion advance/quartering party implements analog and/or digital communications plan. a. Establishes analog and digital communications and local area networks between CP and subordinate and adjacent units. b. Establishes analog and digital communications and local area networks between CP and higher HQ. c. Employs signal security measures. *9. Battalion advance/quartering party leader supervises reception of main body. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and digital communications. b. Identifies guide pickup points. c. Briefs ground guides on moving main body into their respective areas with emphasis on OPSEC measures. d. Directs dispatching of unit guides to the RP. e. Monitors subordinate units' guide activities to ensure compliance with party leaders guidance and TSOP. f. Enforces countersurveillance measures. g. Provides progress report to the S2/3 and commander upon arrival of main body using analog and/or digital communications, courier, or MTS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
031-503-1014	Identify Chemical Agents Using M8 Detector Paper	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1020	Detect Chemical Agents Using M9 Detector Paper	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2001	Use M256 or M256A1 Chemical Agent Detector Kit	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
052-192-1135	Locate Mines by Probing	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-1-SMCT
052-193-1013	Neutralize Booby Traps	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Establish Battalion Command Post (Forward) (63-1-4016) (FM 10-27-3, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 101-5, FM 10-27-2, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-3, FM 3-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion advance/quartering party has secured the new area. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion staff sections have assigned personnel to establish the CP (Forward). The staff advance party element is part of the advance/quartering party. The S2/S3 Section has provided instructions relating to CP site preparation. Communications requirements have been requested from the supporting signal element. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command and control of battalion operations continues during battalion HQ "jump" to a new location. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish the CP (Forward).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Battalion HQ Advance Party Element establishes CP (Forward). a. Positions vehicles, tentage, or equipment to be used IAW layout plan. b. Sets up internal arrangement to permit immediate access to all required information. c. Sets up maps and overlays that display locations of support facilities. d. Constructs barriers around CP (Forward) as prescribed by the TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. Battalion HQ Advance Party Element supervises forward tactical operations. a. Provides staff supervision over establishment of the CP area to ensure compliance with layout plan and TSOP. b. Establishes analog and/or digital communications with higher HQ, adjacent, and subordinate units as prescribed by the movement order, TSOP, and SOI/SSI. c. Provides movement assistance to subordinate units out of the range of rear CP's communications. d. Maintains situation map(s) with current disposition of friendly and enemy units. 3. Battalion HQ Advance Party Element supervises forward logistics and CHS operations. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate analog and digital communications or courier. b. Integrates planned logistics and CHS operations into the division distribution system. c. Establishes intransit and total asset visibility of sustainment resources flowing into the area. d. Directs, redirects, cross-levels or masses logistics and CHS at critical points in the area of responsibility based on METT-TC and the commander's guidance. e. Maintains analog and/or digital situation maps depicting subordinate and supported units in the battalion's area of responsibility. f. Maintains current customer listing. g. Maintains current staff files and journals. h. Relays operational information from supported units to rear party CP that affects support operations using analog and/or digital communications or courier. i. Provides current operations briefing to S2/S3 and respective staff sections upon arrival of main body.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section

TASK: Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements (63-1-4018) (FM 55-1, FM 101-5, FM 10-27-2, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-3, FM 55-10, FM 55-30)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: All subordinate unit relocation plans are available. The S2/S3 Section is required to monitor road marches until all closing reports are received. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays with SP, checkpoints, RP, critical points and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. First battalion element crosses its SP. Deviations from movement order occur. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All subordinate units are relocated to new areas as prescribed in movement order. Each subordinate unit and battalion HQ makes a closing report as prescribed in the TSOP. Rear party departs when main body has established the new area. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase staff reaction and coordination of movement deviations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Staff Sections coordinate support with HQ/Supply company for the move. a. Coordinate additional CHS requirements with medical element that has area responsibility. b. Coordinate additional recovery requirements with maintenance element that has area responsibility. c. Coordinate engineer and MP support requirements with elements that have area responsibility. d. Coordinate convoy clearance request with movement control element that has area responsibility.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Brief HQ/Supply company march commander on tactical situation, communications frequencies and procedures, and emergency action procedures. f. Coordinate constant communications from the SP until the RP. 2. S2/S3 Section monitors movement of subordinate companies and battalion HQ. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS, or analog and/or digital communications. b. Maintains communications with each subordinate unit and battalion HQ elements IAW movement order and TSOP. c. Maintains situation map(s) and overlays displaying subordinate units and battalion HQ elements' movement progress. d. Provides corrective actions to subordinate units and battalion HQ elements when deviations from movement order occur (speed, interval, route adjustments) using MTS, or analog and/or digital communications. e. Provides coordination for emergency support between subordinate units and area support units, based on the type and level of emergency. f. Coordinates en route subordinate units' support requirements with area support units until all known requirements are fulfilled. g. Records closing reports from subordinate units and battalion HQ elements upon receipt. h. Provides final movement report upon receipt of all closing reports to commander and higher HQ using analog and/or digital communications or MTS. 3. S2/S3 Section directs external support operations during move. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS/STAMIS, analog and/or digital communications. b. Coordinates requirements with the supported unit(s) and supporting material management element.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Coordinates pickup or delivery of sustainment resources between subordinate units and requesting units. d. Communicates emergency requirements to the main body battalion staff. e. Provides closure report to CP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
113-573-8006	Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion Headquarters (63-1-4019) (FM 10-27-3, AR 530-1, FM 101-5, FM 101-5-1, FM 10-27-2, FM 34-130)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Subordinate units are moving along designated route(s) to new area(s). The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital or analog devices. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion advance/quartering party is dispatched to the new CP area. Subordinate units are required to submit closing reports. The advance/quartering party has established the advance CP. The battalion advance/quartering party leader briefs the commander on the status of new area preparation. The S2/3 issued occupation plans to the CP and subordinate units. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Subordinate units, support facilities, and the CP are established IAW layout plan, OPORD, and TSOP. All new CP preparation tasks are accomplished as directed by the S2/3 IAW TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish a CP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section monitors movement of advance/quartering parties. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications. b. Maintains constant radio communications IAW movement order and TSOP. c. Coordinates support or emergency action requirements with appropriate element based on assistance required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. Battalion HQ performs CP functions. a. Supervises establishment of battalion area IAW layout plan and TSOP. b. Establishes battalion messenger system until local area networks and analog and/or digital communications have been established. c. Coordinates logistics and CHS operations from forward location (limited operations). d. Supervises the establishment of local area networks and analog and/or digital communications within the CP area. e. Sets up battalion analog/digital situation map(s). 3. S2/3 Section monitors deployment of subordinate units and battalion HQ. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications. b. Supervises deployment of units as prescribed by the layout plan. c. Coordinates impact of unit position changes with other staff sections. d. Approves unit position changes of subordinate elements that are caused by terrain and/or tactical considerations. e. Posts analog/digital situation map(s) and overlay(s) to reflect new unit positions. f. Provides deployment update to commander and XO.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center (LOC) (63-1-4020) (FM 63-21, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 101-5, FM 10-27-2, FM 10-27-3, FM 63-20)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The main body of the battalion HQ has arrived at the new location. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital or analog devices. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The S2/3 has selected the general location of the LOC and administrative areas. Advance CP personnel have identified specific locations and initial preparations are completed. All required personnel and equipment are available. The CP (Forward) maintains operational control of the battalion until the new LOC is established. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: LOC is capable of communicating with and controlling support assets and survival measure assets within the time specified in the TSOP. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increases time required to establish logistics center and administrative areas.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 section establish LOC. a. Identify staff working areas that facilitates immediate access of staff personnel to all required information. b. Set up internal arrangement IAW XO, S2/S3 Officers' guidance. c. Set up analog/digital maps, map overlays, and informational displays that show the current tactical situations of all friendly and enemy forces affecting the battalion's mission IAW TSOP. d. Set up analog/digital status boards. NOTE: Status boards display locations of support facilities and their capabilities and status of personnel and equipment. e. Establish commander's briefing area.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Prepare sleep plan that is consistent with phases of supported unit's operations. g. Establish policy file, records, staff journals, and section workbooks. h. Set up area access and security IAW the TSOP. 2. S1 and S4 Sections establish administrative areas. a. Identify staff working areas that facilitate immediate staff access to all required information. b. Set up maps and status boards displaying status of internal logistics, personnel, and equipment. c. Establish communications nets in the order of priority specified by the S6/S2/S3. d. Establish policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks. e. Coordinate generator electrical power with the S6/S2/S3. 3. Commo Section establishes analog and digital communications. NOTE: The S2/S3 Section must perform this task step if unit does not have an S6 Section. a. Establishes all communications nets in order of priority specified in the TSOP and OPORD. b. Establishes area for processing incoming and outgoing messages. c. Installs local area network. d. Operates local area network. e. Issues passwords. f. Installs antivirus software. g. Troubleshoots hardware needing repair.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Direct Deployment Alert Activities (63-1-4850) (FM 100-17, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion receives a warning order to go to an increased deployability posture in preparation for overseas deployment. The movement plan/order, recall plan, security plan, and TSOP are available. The battalion's subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The battalion communicates with subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion personnel are recalled IAW the Recall Plan. Personnel are designated to staff emergency operations center IAW RSOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S2/3 Section/Staff Duty Officer executes alert notification procedures. a. Authenticates deployment warning order IAW TSOP. b. Notifies commander and S2/3 that battalion has received a deployment warning order. c. Initiates recall procedures IAW commander's guidance and Recall Plan. *2. Commander and S2/3 supervise alert and recall activities. a. Direct implementation of Recall Plan, as required. b. Direct establishment of the EOC. c. Task staff sections to provide personnel for the EOC IAW TSOP and commander's guidance. d. Monitor recall progress for compliance with TSOP. e. Designate location of EOC.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
3. S2/3 Section monitors progress of recall. a. Identifies time-phased present-for-duty requirements by reviewing recall plan. b. Identifies present-for-duty status by reviewing recall status reports from subordinate units. c. Calculates recall percentages IAW recall plan. d. Monitors establishment of physical security of battalion HQ and subordinate unit areas by inspection and/or review of recall status reports. e. Briefs commander and S2/3 on progress of recall. 4. Staff sections perform alert functions. a. Designate personnel to staff EOC IAW TSOP. b. Brief staff officer/section chiefs on status of recall, as required. 5. S2/3 Section performs deployment alert activities. a. Coordinates with higher HQ staff element for guidance concerning deployment requirements. b. Issues SOIs, authentication tables, operations codes, frequency, and call signs to subordinate units. c. Directs units to initiate OPSEC procedures. d. Activates guard mount to control access to restricted areas, as designated. e. Sends request to S4 Section for maps, if needed. f. Establishes secure communications with higher HQ staff elements and/or installation EOC. g. Identifies liaison to higher HQ, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Establish the Emergency Operations Center (63-1-4851) (FM 101-5, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 3-19.30)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has directed that the EOC be established. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Battalion personnel have been recalled. Personnel and equipment required to establish the EOC are available. The location of the EOC has been designated. The RSOP, movement plan/order, and security plan are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The EOC is established IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance and within the time specified by the XO or S2/3.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. XO or S2/3 supervises establishment of the EOC. a. Identifies EOC requirements and layout by reviewing the RSOP and commander's guidance. b. Directs S2/3 Section to set up EOC IAW RSOP and commander's guidance. c. Assigns EOC work areas to staff elements. d. Directs staff sections to set up EOC work areas IAW RSOP and commander's guidance. 2. S2/3 Section sets up EOC. a. Identifies work areas that facilitate immediate access of personnel to all required information. b. Sets up internal arrangement of EOC IAW XO or S2/3 guidance. c. Establishes communications and/or data processing in order of the priority specified in the movement plan/order and/or RSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Sets up maps, map overlays, informational displays, and status boards. e. Establishes areas for processing incoming and outgoing messages. f. Establishes commander's work area. g. Establishes commander's briefing area. h. Prepares EOC manning schedule. i. Establishes policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks. j. Sets up area access and security IAW the RSOP and security plan. k. Prepares EOC access roster. l. Distributes EOC access roster IAW RSOP and security plan. m. Briefs XO or S2/3 upon completion of the EOC setup. 3. Staff sections set up EOC work areas. a. Position equipment IAW RSOP. b. Establish policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks. c. Set up maps and status boards displaying status of deployment operations. d. Set up briefing area for daily situation briefings. e. Brief XO or S2/3 when EOC is operational.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section

TASK: Operate the Emergency Operations Center (63-1-4852) (FM 101-5, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 3-0, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-19.30)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion deployment activities have commenced. Staff journals, workbooks, current maps, overlays, the TSOP, movement plan/order, movement directive, and physical security plan are available. The EOC is required to coordinate the battalion's deployment activities. Wheeled vehicles and equipment move to the APOE and SPOE by convoy or rail. The EOC communicates with the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion deployment activities and information dissemination are performed IAW the TSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. XO or S2/3 supervises EOC operations. a. Inspects entry and exit procedures for compliance with the physical security plan. b. Assigns specific areas of responsibility and work shifts to all assigned members. c. Monitors the performance of personnel in their functional areas to ensure compliance with established guidance and the TSOP. d. Provides briefings on current situation to the commander, as required. 2. Staff Sections perform EOC deployment support duties. a. Maintain staff journal(s) and entries IAW current command policy and TSOP. b. Maintain section workbook(s) that contain incoming messages and reports under the appropriate heading and cross-references.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Maintain current maps and overlays depicting all routes and locations that affect the EOC's operation. d. Maintain current journal files that contain material necessary to support all daily EOC and section journal entries. e. Submit deployment readiness reports to appropriate HQ and installation EOC IAW TSOP and commander's guidance, as required. 3. Staff Sections monitor movement of subordinate units' equipment to APOE and SPOE. NOTE: For digitally equipped units, these actions will be performed using FBCB2, MTS, or MCS. a. Monitor rail loading, convoy staging, and other movement activities (for example commercial transport arrival at airfields for compliance with the movement order.) b. Maintain communications with each subordinate unit IAW movement order and TSOP. c. Monitor SP, checkpoint, RP, and closing reports from convoy commanders for compliance with movement order. d. Post subordinate units' movement progress on the situation map. e. Annotate subordinate units' march progress on road movement graphs. f. Provide corrective actions to subordinate units when deviations from movement order occur (speed, interval, and route adjustments). g. Provide coordination for emergency support between subordinate units and area support units, based on the type and level of emergency. h. Provide current movement status of subordinate units to the S2/3 and commander. i. Record closing reports from subordinate units upon receipt. j. Provide final movement report upon receipt of all closing reports to commander and appropriate HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities (63-1-4853) (FM 100-17, AR 220-10, FM 100-10, FM 3-0, FM 101-5, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The RSOP, movement plan/order, and other required documents are available. Battalion deployment/redeployment activities have commenced. The battalion is located in the home station UAA or RAA and the EOC/CP is established. The gaining command has provided a deployment/redeployment message indicating ultimate destination and deployability criteria. The battalion HQ communicates with the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, supporting organizations, subordinate units, and rear detachment by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Deployment/redeployment activities are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commander directs deployment/redeployment activities. a. Identifies deployment/redeployment mission requirements by reviewing warning order and appropriate CONPLANs. b. Provides initial planning guidance to staff and subordinate units. c. Directs S1 to coordinate SRP processing. d. Directs personnel and equipment cross-leveling actions. e. Submits recommendations to appropriate HQ commander that selected personnel attending formal school be allowed to complete course work, if appropriate (deployment only). f. Directs recall of personnel on temporary duty, attending school, or in authorized leave status, if appropriate (deployment only).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Directs S2/3 to issue deployment/redeployment WARNO and movement plan/order. h. Directs implementation of physical security and OPSEC plans. i. Briefs staff and subordinate units on deployment/redeployment mission. j. Conducts overseas orientation. k. Verifies subordinate commanders clear installation prior to deployment. l. Conducts periodic in-process reviews to monitor preparations for deployment, issue and exchange detailed guidance, refine movement plans, resolve issues, and coordinate support for the deployment. m. Conducts liaison to higher HQ, as required. n. Coordinates with servicing Staff Judge Advocate's office for briefings regarding legal considerations (such as Law of War, Status of Forces, Rules of Engagement, and Code of Conduct). o. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications. p. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures. *2. XO supervises staff activities. a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making. b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating movement plan/order. c. Directs staff sections to provide personnel for deployment/redeployment teams (such as advance party and rear detachment.) d. Directs staff sections to provide input for movement plan/order update. e. Formulates staff operating policies.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance. g. Coordinates deployment/redeployment mission with subordinate unit commanders. h. Supervises the operations of the EOC/CP. *3. Staff officers supervise staff sections. a. Identify all specified and implied tasks that must be accomplished in order to deploy/redeploy by reviewing the movement directive, TSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLANs, and commander's guidance. b. Exchange pertinent information that is relevant to the deployment/redeployment with other staff sections. c. Provide information update(s) to commander and EOC/CP on areas that are critical to the deployment/redeployment mission. d. Direct preparation of input to the S2/3 Section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's overseas orientation, as required. e. Provide personnel for deployment/redeployment teams, as required. f. Forward deployment/redeployment status reports to appropriate HQ and addressees, as required. g. Forward personnel and logistics reports IAW higher HQ guidance. 4. Command Section supervises activities of subordinate units. a. Monitors performance of subordinate elements to ensure required level of proficiency as prescribed in TSOP, plans, policies, directives, and the TSOP. b. Monitors external support to determine overall effectiveness, IAW TSOP. c. Assigns specific tasks to subordinate units, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Monitors implementation of decisions, directives, and instructions to determine subordinate units' compliance. e. Issues FRAGOs to implement changes to the movement plan/order and annexes, as required. *5. Commander and/or XO supervises rear detachment activities. a. Appoints rear detachment commander. b. Approves rear detachment staffing. c. Approves rear detachment plan. d. Monitors rear detachment activities for compliance with rear detachment plan. e. Coordinates with servicing Staff Judge Advocate's office. 6. S1 Section performs deployment activities. a. Coordinates PAO briefings for deploying units. b. Verifies appropriate personnel transactions are input for all deploying soldiers once soldiers have completed SRP. c. Coordinates with legal representatives on pending legal actions for deploying soldiers. d. Coordinates SRB processing. e. Maintains personnel asset visibility. f. Completes legal actions, as directed by commander. 7. Staff sections perform readiness activities. a. Identify readiness shortfalls of subordinate units based on current USR. b. Evaluate subordinate units' ability to perform mission requirements based on USRs and other status reports required by higher HQ, such as the CSSCS generated PERSTAT and LOGSTAT reports.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Develop plan to correct deficiencies to bring subordinate units to deployment standards. d. Back up all automated systems prior to systems being prepared for movement. e. Brief battalion commander on readiness activities and status of subordinate units. f. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications. g. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Update Movement Plan/Order (63-1-4854) (FM 101-5, DOD 4500.32-R (VOL 1), DOD 4500.32-R (VOL 2), FM 100-17, FM 55-1, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The movement directive, SRP information message, RSOP, movement plan/order, and CONPLAN/OPLAN are available. The commander has directed that the movement plan/order be updated, and the XO has assigned staff responsibilities. The commander has provided his deployment guidance and concept of operations. The S2/3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the movement plan/order. Movement plan becomes movement order upon implementation. The movement directive, deployment information message, RSOP, movement plan/order, and CONPLAN/OPLAN are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The movement plan/order is updated IAW appropriate FM, the RSOP, movement directive, and commander's guidance and within the time prescribed by the commander or XO.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. XO and S2/3 perform a time analysis. a. Calculate total time remaining before deployment/ redeployment commences (C-Day). b. Identify all steps in the deployment/redeployment process. c. Assign time limitation for each step in the deployment/redeployment process. d. Disseminate time limitations to all staff sections.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/3 Section coordinates staffing for deployment teams. a. Identifies personnel, equipment, and accompanying supplies for deployment, to include configuration of equipment as offered for shipment. b. Coordinates deployment team requirements with staff sections. c. Forwards personnel and equipment requirements for deployment teams to commander and/or XO for approval or modification. d. Incorporates personnel and equipment requirements for deployment teams into updated movement plan/order. 3. Staff sections provide input to movement plan/order update. a. Identify internal mission support requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment information message, commander's guidance, and appropriate CONPLAN/OPLANs. b. Identify external support requirements by reviewing RSOP and status reports from subordinate units. c. Adjust preplanned requirements, as required. d. Verify availability of required support by coordinating with appropriate battalion elements and/or installation deployment support organizations. e. Update appropriate staff portions of the movement plan/order, as required. f. Provide updated movement plan/order input to S2/3 Section. 4. S2/3 Section updates movement plan/order. a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Prepares updated copy of movement plan/order with annexes.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification. d. Distributes movement plan/order update IAW movement plan/order distribution list using analog and digital communications or MCS, as appropriate.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support (63-1-4855)
(AR 220-10, AR 600-8-104, AR 600-8-19, AR 614-185, AR 614-200, FM 100-17)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT T P U (circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion commander has directed SRP processing to be conducted and the orientation for the new AO be prepared. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The movement directive, deployment message, RSOP, and movement plan/order, maps, overlays and other required documents are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, installation deployment support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: SRP processing support is coordinated IAW RSOP, commander's guidance, appropriate AR, and a SRP processing schedule is distributed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S1 supervises SRP processing. a. Identifies deployability criteria by reviewing deployment message. b. Approves SRP processing schedule. c. Monitors SRP processing for compliance with TSOP and SRP processing schedule. d. Coordinates adjustments to the processing schedule with the Processing Center (PROC CS) and appropriate subordinate unit. e. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on status of SRP processing, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S1 Section coordinates SRP processing support. a. Identifies SRP processing requirements by reviewing TSOP, movement directive, and commander's guidance. b. Requests staff elements and subordinate units to provide SRP processing support, as appropriate. c. Coordinates SRP processing support with the appropriate HQ. d. Submits SRP processing requests and deploying personnel rosters to SRP processing support organizations IAW TSOP. 3. S1 Section publishes SRP processing schedule. a. Verifies SRP processing date and time with installation EOC and appropriate supporting organizations. b. Prepares SRP processing schedule for subordinate units based on coordination with installation EOC and supporting organizations. c. Submits SRP processing schedule to S1 for approval or modification. d. Distributes SRP processing schedule to all appropriate staff sections and subordinate units. 4. Staff sections prepare input to commander's overseas orientation. a. Identify mission support requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment information message, commander's guidance, and appropriate CONPLAN/OPLANs. b. Identify characteristics of theater of operations that impact on unit's mission performance (for example topography, climate, demographics, political stability, medical threat, traditions, and customs). c. Provide commander's overseas orientation input to S2/S3 Section.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
5. S1 Section prepares the commander's overseas orientation. a. Verifies staff input for completeness. b. Prepares commander's overseas orientation briefing and supporting material. c. Forwards overseas orientation briefing material to commander or XO.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S1 Section

TASK: Provide Deployment Human Resources Support (63-1-4856) (AR 220-10, AR 215-1, AR 220-1, AR 25-400-2, AR 600-8-104, AR 614-185, AR 614-200, DA PAM 600-8-2, FM 12-6)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Adjustments to unit strengths and coordination for administrative support are required prior to the battalion's deployment to an overseas site. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. SRP processing has been completed. The movement directive, deployment information message, RSOP, and movement plan/order are available. The S1 Section continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, and deployment support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel and administrative services support is provided IAW appropriate FMs and ARs, RSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S1 supervises personnel readiness actions. a. Directs personnel screening. b. Recommends to commander cross-leveling actions and disposition of personnel on TDY, attending school, in authorized leave status, and identified as nondeployable. c. Directs recall of personnel on TDY, attending school, and in authorized leave status IAW commander's guidance. d. Directs cross-leveling of personnel IAW commander's guidance. e. Coordinates personnel replacement and disposition of excess and nondeployable personnel with higher echelon S1. f. Directs disposition of excess and nondeployable personnel IAW higher echelon S1 instructions. g. Briefs commander and XO on personnel readiness status, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S1 Section performs personnel screening. a. Identifies officer and enlisted personnel attending service schools, TDY, and in authorized leave status. b. Recalls personnel on TDY, attending school, and in authorized leave status IAW S1's guidance. c. Reports all unfilled school quotas to higher echelon S1. d. Identifies individual deployability criteria by reviewing deployment message. e. Identifies nondeployable personnel by reviewing personnel records, SRP results, and commander's guidance. f. Prepares deployment personnel status report. g. Forwards list of personnel who have completed the SRP process to S1. h. Briefs S1 on battalion deployment personnel status. 3. S1 Section performs cross-leveling of personnel. a. Identifies personnel overages and shortages by grade, MOS, and MOS qualification by reviewing personnel status reports. b. Verifies personnel overages and shortages by reviewing subordinate units' personnel status reports. c. Redistributes personnel within the battalion based on S1 and commander's guidance. d. Transfers nondeployable personnel as directed by higher HQ. e. Recalculates personnel overages and shortages by grade, MOS, and MOS qualification. f. Submits enlisted requisitions. g. Submits officer requisitions. h. Updates SIDPERS records, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
4. S1 Section performs personnel disposition functions. a. Forwards copies of movement directive to school commandant(s) for personnel who will join unit in theater upon completion of school. b. Requests disposition instructions for excess and nondeployable personnel from higher echelon S1 Section. c. Reassigns excess and nondeployable personnel IAW higher echelon S1 Section instructions. d. Clears unavailable, nondeployable personnel IAW higher echelon S1 Section instructions. 5. S1 Section performs personnel replacement functions. a. Notifies higher S1 of shortages. b. Assigns filler personnel IAW S1 guidance. 6. S1 Section provides personnel services support. a. Identifies personnel service requirements by reviewing the movement directive, movement plan/order, deployment message, and RSOP. b. Submits requests for personnel services support from the higher echelon S1, as required. c. Coordinates postal support with supporting AG. d. Coordinates for recreational equipment and services with the installation Recreational Services Officer. e. Coordinates Red Cross support with the local ARC office. f. Coordinates religious support with installation chaplain. g. Coordinates press and home town news releases with the installation PAO. h. Coordinates disposition of POV and storage of personal property with PMO.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Appoints subordinate unit Class A agents on battalion orders, as required. j. Closes out unit funds IAW the RSOP. k. Coordinates legal services/support with the servicing Staff Judge Advocate's office. l. Provides personnel services input for the movement plan/order to the S2/S3 Section. 7. S1 Section provides records management support. a. Identifies personnel records to accompany unit to theater of operations. b. Identifies records to be transferred to records holding area. c. Directs units to prepare and maintain abbreviated records. d. Provides records management input for the rear detachment plan to the S2/S3 Section.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S1 Section

TASK: Coordinate Family Assistance Support (63-1-4857) (AR 608-18, AR 215-1, AR 608-1, FM 100-17)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Requests for family assistance are received from subordinate units and individual families. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The family assistance plan, RSOP, and movement plan/order are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the ITO and installation support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. The TSOPs are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Family assistance support is coordinated and the updated family assistance plan is distributed IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S1 supervises family assistance support activities. a. Appoints Family Assistance Officer(s), as required. b. Approves updated family assistance plan. c. Monitors family assistance briefings and activities for compliance with the family assistance plan and commander's guidance. d. Briefs commander, XO, subordinate unit commanders, and rear detachment commander on family assistance requirements and availability of support. 2. S1 Section coordinates family assistance support. a. Identifies family assistance support requirements by reviewing RSOP, subordinate unit reports, and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates family assistance requirements with staff sections. c. Coordinates for input into the family assistance plan update with staff sections. d. Coordinates family assistance support (for example ACS, AER, SJA, and Red Cross) with installation agencies.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Coordinates with the Chief of ACS and the SJA to conduct or participate in family support briefings IAW installation deployment plan. f. Briefs the S1 on family assistance requirements and available support. 3. S1 Section updates family assistance plan. a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Prepares updated copy of family assistance plan. c. Forwards draft copy to S1 for approval or modification. d. Distributes updated family assistance plan IAW RSOP. 4. S1 Section provides support to families. a. Establishes family assistance briefing site and schedules. b. Prepares family assistance information packet detailing available support. c. Conducts family assistance briefings IAW briefing schedule. d. Provides family assistance information packet to families. e. Refers personnel requiring assistance to appropriate agencies. 5. Battalion Family Support Group representatives perform family assistance activities. a. Communicate with all unit level representatives at least once every week during deployment. b. Conduct battalion FSG meetings with unit level representatives to address family member concerns. c. Disseminate information through FSG channels.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Coordinate Deployment Training Support (63-1-4858) (AR 350-1, AR 220-1, AR 220-10, FM 100-17, TC 25-1, TC 25-20, TC 25-8)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Training deficiencies exist within the battalion. Training is required before the battalion deploys to an overseas site. Training status reports are being received from subordinate units. The movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, and deployment message are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Coordination for deployment training support is accomplished IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S2/3 supervises deployment training. a. Identifies training requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement directive, deployment plan/OPORD, deployment message, subordinate unit training reports, and commander's guidance. b. Provides guidance on training requirements and priorities. c. Approves training schedule. d. Monitors training for compliance with training schedule and commander's guidance. e. Coordinates adjustments to the training schedule with appropriate subordinate unit commanders and/or agencies providing training support, as required. f. Verifies personnel have completed training by reviewing subordinate units training reports. g. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on status of training, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/3 Section publishes deployment training schedule. a. Coordinates for training support with battalion staff and subordinate units, as required. b. Submits training support requests to appropriate installation support agencies IAW RSOP and S2/3 guidance. c. Prepares training schedule for subordinate units based on coordination with supporting organizations. d. Submits training schedule to S2/3 for approval or modification. e. Distributes training schedule to appropriate staff sections and subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions (63-1-4859) (FM 34-1, AR 190-13, AR 380-19-1, AR 380-5, AR 530-1, FM 34-80)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a deployment warning order and the commander has issued his guidance. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The OPSEC Plan, Physical Security Plan, standing signal instructions/standing signal instructions, movement directive, RSOP, deployment plan/OPORD, and deployment message are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. The TSOPs are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Intelligence is disseminated to subordinate units and intelligence support functions are accomplished IAW higher echelon S2 instructions, RSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section implements physical security procedures. a. Designates the EOC as a restricted area. b. Provides access roster of personnel authorized access to restricted areas. c. Provides list of authorized classified document couriers, security managers, custodians, and alternates to appropriate HQ. d. Provides a list of area physical security actions taken to appropriate HQ. e. Monitors physical security activities for compliance with Physical Security Plan, RSOP, and commander's guidance. 2. S2/3 Section implements commander's OPSEC program. a. Conducts OPSEC analysis to identify OPSEC requirements. b. Updates OPSEC Plan based on analysis. c. Implements the OPSEC Plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Provides feedback on status of OPSEC program to commander and subordinate units. e. Provides OPSEC input to appropriate orders and plans. f. Coordinates for an OPSEC sweep of battalion HQ and subordinate units with installation MI detachment. g. Conducts OPSEC briefings, as required. 3. S2/3 Section provides classified documents and map services. a. Identifies classified documents and map requirements by reviewing requests from subordinate units, RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, and commander's guidance. b. Submits request for classified maps to the higher HQ S2 Section. c. Submits requisitions for classified documents through appropriate channels. d. Distributes classified documents and maps to staff and subordinate units, as appropriate. e. Requests disposition instructions for classified documents not required from higher echelon S2. f. Publishes policies and procedures for transfer of classified documents IAW higher echelon S2 instructions. g. Maintains accountability of classified documents. 4. S2/3 Section performs personnel security functions. a. Identifies security clearance requirements by reviewing RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, deployment message, and commander's guidance. b. Verifies security clearance of deploying soldiers. c. Submits request for security clearances to higher echelon S2/3. d. Provides instructions to subordinate units on the removal of unit patches, badges, and unit insignia on clothing and equipment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
5. S2/3 Section implements SIGSEC procedures. a. Provides SIGSEC guidance to staff and subordinate units. b. Monitors all methods of unit communications for compliance with SOI/SSI and RSOP. c. Briefs the S2/3 on SIGSEC activities. 6. S2/3 Section provides intelligence briefings on theater of operations. a. Coordinates with commander to identify commander's information requirements. b. Requests current intelligence and background information on the theater of operations from higher echelon S2. c. Conducts analysis of theater of operations by reviewing deployment OPLAN/OPORD and appropriate publications. d. Develops intelligence briefing on theater of operations. e. Submits briefing to S2/3 for approval or modification. f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate units on characteristics of the theater of operations and potential impact on support operations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S4 Section

TASK: Provide Deployment Logistics Support (63-1-4860) (AR 725-50, AR 220-1, AR 710-2, AR 710-3, FM 100-17, FM 3-100.4, TM 38-250)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a deployment warning order and the commander has issued his guidance. The movement directive, movement plan/order, deployment message, RSOP, port call messages, subordinate unit Automated Unit Equipment List, and OPLAN/CONPLAN annexes are available. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. Equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Deployment logistics support is provided to subordinate units and coordination for requisitioning, issue, or cross-leveling of vehicles, supplies, and equipment is accomplished IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S4 supervises deployment logistics support activities. a. Identifies logistics requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment message, OPLAN/CONPLAN, and subordinate unit supply, maintenance, and movement status reports. b. Recommends cross-leveling actions to the commander. c. Directs cross-leveling of supplies and equipment IAW commander's guidance. d. Directs disposition of excess supplies and equipment IAW higher echelon S4 instructions. e. Prioritizes equipment, requiring support maintenance IAW commander's guidance. f. Submits request to higher HQ staff element for activation of additional UICs for deploying elements, as needed. g. Monitors supply and maintenance activities for compliance with movement SOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Monitors movement preparation activities for compliance with RSOP, mobilization plan (RC), movement plans, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. i. Directs units to turn in keys to unit buildings and areas to rear detachment commander prior to main body departing. j. Briefs commander and XO on logistics readiness status, as required. k. Obtains deployment project code to facilitate rapid supply actions. l. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 2. S4 Section provides supply and services support. a. Identifies special equipment and/or clothing requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment message, and OPLAN/CONPLAN. b. Coordinates issue of special equipment and/or clothing with higher echelon S4, installation Director of Logistics, and appropriate supporting agencies. c. Coordinates emergency calibration of deploying equipment. d. Updates supply requisitions with correct force activity designator, deployment UICs, and deployment ship to address, as needed. e. Verifies all requisitions have been either canceled or updated with a deployment address. f. Coordinates disposition of excess equipment and clothing with higher echelon S4 and/or installation DOL. g. Submits requisitions for containers, MHE, blocking, bracing, and packing materials to appropriate supporting agencies IAW RSOP. h. Provides disposition instructions for excess equipment and clothing to subordinate units. i. Coordinates pick-up of basic and prescribed loads with higher echelon S4 Section or installation DOL.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
j. Provides instruction for pick-up of basic and prescribed loads to subordinate units. k. Coordinates POL support for movement to A/SPOE with higher echelon S4 or installation DOL. l. Monitors the preparation of basic and prescribed loads for compliance with RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance. m. Briefs S4, as required. n. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. o. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 3. S4 Section coordinates cross-leveling of vehicles, equipment, and supplies. a. Identifies shortages and overages by reviewing subordinate unit's vehicle, equipment, and supply status reports. b. Reallocates vehicles, equipment, and supplies within the battalion IAW commander's guidance. c. Submits requisitions for vehicles, equipment, and supplies to higher echelon S4 Section. d. Requests disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies from higher echelon S4 Section. e. Verifies all equipment transactions have been completed and equipment is properly signed for by reviewing property book and unit hand receipts. f. Updates property book, as required. g. Briefs S4, as required. h. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. i. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
4. S4 Section provides maintenance support. a. Identifies maintenance requirements by reviewing RSOP, status reports from subordinate units, and commander's guidance. b. Provides MST support to subordinate units, as required. c. Coordinates for maintenance support, status of vehicles and equipment in support maintenance, disposition of nondeployable vehicles and equipment, and float equipment support with supporting maintenance activity. d. Provides instructions on the disposition of nondeployable vehicles and equipment and float equipment support to subordinate units. e. Coordinates maintenance support at the APOE/SPOE staging area with supporting installation. f. Submits vehicles and equipment to support maintenance IAW S4 instructions. g. Coordinates maintenance support for movement to A/SPOE with higher echelon S4 or installation DOL. h. Briefs S4, as required. i. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. j. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. 5. S4 Section provides movement support. a. Identifies transportation requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and subordinate unit AUELs. b. Verifies that subordinate unit personnel and equipment transportation requirements have been submitted and are accurate by coordinating with unit movement officer. c. Provides movement and documentation assistance to subordinate unit UMOs, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Requests scales and MHE support from DOL, as required and reviewing deployment equipment list. e. Verifies rail and/or commercial transportation availability and movement schedules for containers and outsize, oversize, or overweight pieces of equipment by coordinating with the UMC. f. Coordinates convoy clearances and special hauling permits with the IC-unit movement coordinator (UMO), as required. g. Submits request(s) for required road march items to supporting supply activity. h. Coordinates subordinate units en route support requirements with the UMC until all known requirements are fulfilled. i. Coordinates for return transportation support for battalion personnel from the SPOE to battalion area with UMC. j. Coordinates advance party and main body personnel transportation requirements to the APOE with appropriate HQ. k. Conducts movement status briefing(s) for the commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as necessary. l. Briefs S4, as required. m. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. n. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications. *6. S4 coordinates SPOE MA activities. a. Monitors staging and processing of vehicles and equipment for compliance with movement order, call forward instructions, and supporting installation officials' instructions. b. Resolves vehicle and equipment processing deficiencies by coordinating with supporting installation officials. c. Coordinates disposition of frustrated vehicles and cargo with supporting installation personnel.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Verifies arrangement for supercargoes by coordinating with port commander's representatives. e. Briefs S4, as required. f. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. g. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities (63-1-4861) (FM 100-17, FM 55-65, TM 38-250)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a movement warning order for deployment. Subordinate units provide personnel and equipment for the advance party. The movement plan/order, RSOP, advance party plan, and TSOP are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. Logistics and movement support is provided to the advance party by the supporting installation and MTMC, respectively. Theater logistics support is provided to the advance party by the combatant commander's designated support organization. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance party operations are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 Section plans advance party operations. a. Identifies advance party requirements by reviewing movement order, RSOP, TSOP, and commander's guidance. b. Updates advance party plan IAW commander's guidance. c. Coordinates personnel and equipment for the advance party with staff sections and subordinate units IAW advance party plan. d. Briefs advance party OIC on advance party requirements and operations. *2. S2/S3 OIC supervises advance party predeployment activities. a. Identifies advance party support requirements by reviewing advance party plan, movement plan/order, RSOP, and S2/S3 and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates advance party logistics and transportation support with S4 Section.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Coordinates for movement instructions and documentation support with HHC UMO. d. Identifies battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination by reviewing movement plan/order, subordinate unit DELs, and CONPLAN/OPLANs. e. Identifies planned operational locations and mission support requirements by reviewing CONPLAN/OPLANs. f. Revises advance party plan, as required, in coordination with S2/S3. g. Briefs commander, staff, subordinate unit commanders, and advance party personnel on advance party plan, as required. 3. Advance party deploys through APOE to APOD. a. Prepares vehicles for air movement. b. Deploys IAW movement order. c. Performs APOD activities for deployment. 4. Advance party coordinates reception of main body. a. Coordinates for arrival schedule and reception of the main body with AACG. b. Coordinates for movement of personnel to marshaling area with PMCT. c. Coordinate for ship arrival schedule and movement of equipment to TSB with PSA. d. Provides personnel to port commander for movement of equipment from PSA to marshaling area, as required. e. Provides battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to PMCT. f. Coordinates main body logistics and maintenance support requirements with designated supporting organization. g. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on reception and onward movement plans, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
5. Advance party coordinates mission operations. a. Provides battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to appropriate HQ. b. Coordinates for current operational and tactical situation with higher echelon S2/S3 section. c. Identifies preliminary liaison requirements with supporting and supported activities. d. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on operational and tactical situation, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Coordinate Onward Movement (63-1-4862) (FM 100-17-3, FM 100-17, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion and subordinate unit main bodies have arrived at the APOD. The advance party OIC has briefed the commander and staff on the support available in the marshaling/staging area. The PSA moves the battalion's vehicles and equipment from the SPOD to the marshaling/staging area. Administrative and logistics support is provided by an organization designated by the combatant commander. Movement control element provides movement instructions from the TSB to the TAA. The RSOP and TSOP are available. Movement control element monitors battalion's movement to the TAA. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital means of communication, automation systems, and courier. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The main body arrives in the TAA IAW movement control element instructions and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Command Section supervises onward movement activities. a. Coordinates for tactical situation and future support operation information with higher echelon staff. b. Provides staff sections guidance on intransit support requirements and onward movement priorities. c. Establishes liaison with supporting organizations that are providing intransit support and movement instructions. d. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/3 Section supervises preparation and movement to assembly areas. a. Consolidates staff input for intransit support and movement instructions. b. Issues movement order/FRAGO and maps IAW commander's guidance. c. Monitors subordinate unit preparation for convoy operations for compliance with movement order/FRAGO. d. Monitors movement of unit. e. Forwards SP crossing reports, checkpoint times, and closing reports to supporting movement control element. f. Reports arrival in assembly area to higher echelon S2/3 Section. g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 3. S1 Section coordinates intransit support. a. Coordinates human resources support with designated support unit, as required. b. Coordinates medical support with designated medical support unit, as required. c. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on intransit support. 4. S4 Section coordinates marshaling/staging area logistics support. a. Coordinates field feeding and logistics support with designated support unit, as required. b. Provides instructions to subordinate units on inventory, inspection, and property transfer and accountability procedures. c. Identifies maintenance and repair parts requirements by monitoring subordinate unit maintenance status reports.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Coordinates maintenance and repair parts support with designated support unit, as required. e. Provides instructions to subordinate units on drawing weapons, fuel, ammunition, and supplies required for movement to assembly area. f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on intransit support. g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. *5. S4 coordinates movement to assembly area. a. Coordinates for detailed movement instructions with supporting movement control element. b. Provides movement instructions to S2/3 Section. c. Monitors supporting units AUEL updates for compliance with appropriate publication, movement order, and SOP. d. Monitors vehicle preparation and rail loading operations for compliance with movement instructions, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. e. Monitors preparation of movement documentation for compliance with appropriate publications and movement control element instructions. f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders/UMOs on movement, as required. g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Rear Detachment Support (63-1-4863) (FM 100-17, AR 215-1, FM 3-19.30, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Rear detachment support is required. All subordinate units are deploying/redeploying as part of the battalion deployment/redeployment. The rear detachment plan, RSOP, and deployment/redeployment movement plan/order are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation or theater support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital means of communication, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Rear detachment support is coordinated and the updated rear detachment plan is distributed IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S1 Section coordinates rear detachment human resources support. a. Identifies human resources support requirements by reviewing the deployment/redeployment movement plan/order, RSOP, and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates rear detachment staffing requirements with staff sections and subordinate unit commanders. c. Forwards recommendations for rear detachment staffing to commander for approval. d. Coordinates human resources support with higher echelon S1 Section or installation/theater support organizations, as required. e. Provides human resources support input for the rear detachment plan update to the S2/3 Section. f. Coordinates family support group assistance with higher echelon S1.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Briefs the commander, XO, and rear detachment commander on human resources support, as required. h. Coordinates legal support with servicing Staff judge Advocate's office. 2. S4 Section coordinates for rear detachment logistics support. a. Identifies logistics support requirements by reviewing the deployment/redeployment movement plan/order, RSOP, rear detachment plan, and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates logistics support with higher echelon S4 Section or installation/theater support organizations. c. Provides copies of property book, document register, and related documentation to the rear detachment commander, as required. d. Provides logistics support input for the rear detachment plan update to the S2/3 Section. e. Briefs the commander, XO, and rear detachment commander on rear detachment logistics support, as required. 3. S2/3 Section updates rear detachment plan. a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Prepares updated copy of rear detachment plan. c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification. d. Distributes rear detachment plan update IAW RSOP. 4. S2/3 Section provides rear detachment support. a. Requests new classified document access roster and safe access listing for the rear detachment from higher HQ staff element. b. Coordinates changing of combinations for safes and arms room for the rear detachment with higher HQ staff element. c. Assists rear detachment to ensure all classified material not deployed with unit is properly stored, transferred, or destroyed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section

TASK: Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities (63-1-4864) (FM 100-17, FM 12-6, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion and subordinate units' main bodies are preparing to depart home station. The staff has completed initial coordination for personnel and administrative services and logistics support. Subordinate units have delivered records and files designated by the S1 to the rear detachment. Dependents have been briefed on the availability of support from the installation and rear detachment. The RSOP, movement plan/order, family assistance plan, and rear detachment plan are available. The rear detachment receives home station reception requirements from S2/3 Section. The rear detachment continuously receives messages from the installation and higher echelon HQ by analog and/or digital communications. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Rear detachment activities are performed IAW the rear detachment plan and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Rear detachment commander supervises rear detachment activities. a. Identifies rear detachment requirements, policies, and procedures by reviewing the rear detachment plan, family assistance plan, and commander's guidance. b. Conducts inventory and signs for all installation property and equipment transferred into rear detachment from deploying units. c. Publishes a chain of command based on commander's guidance. d. Develops rear detachment program to provide service to soldiers and family remaining in rear. e. Briefs rear detachment personnel on rear detachment plan and command policies.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Verifies availability of personnel and administrative services, legal support, and logistics support by coordinating with the installation AG, SJA, and DOL. g. Briefs rear detachment personnel on available personnel and administrative services, legal support, and logistics support. h. Monitors family support group activities for compliance with family assistance plan. i. Monitors rear detachment activities for compliance with rear detachment plan. j. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 2. Rear detachment provides administrative and logistics support. a. Coordinates SRP processing of late arrivals and/or replacement personnel with the installation AG. b. Provides split base operations support to the deployed part of the unit. c. Provides administrative, legal, and logistics support to late arrivals and/or replacement personnel IAW rear detachment plan. d. Redirects mail IAW rear detachment plan. e. Maintains records and files IAW rear detachment plan and appropriate publications. f. Provides assistance to families IAW the family assistance plan, as required. g. Publishes family support chain of command roster for family member. h. Coordinates reassignment of rear detachment personnel with the installation AG. i. Coordinates inspection and disposition of real property with supporting installation agency, as necessary. j. Conducts physical security inspections of facilities and storage areas.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
k. Reports damage to facilities and storage areas to PMO and installation engineers. l. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 3. Rear detachment commander coordinates reception at home station. a. Identifies reception requirements by reviewing the RSOP and S2/3 Section instructions. b. Verifies availability of transportation and intransit support by coordinating with the ITO. c. Identifies planned welcoming ceremonies by coordinating with installation support activities and PAO. d. Coordinates for transportation of dependents to the APOD with ITO, as required. e. Notifies dependents of transportation and reception plans. f. Provides S2/3 Section information on transportation, intransit support, and welcoming ceremonies.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment (63-1-4865) (FM 100-17, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65, TM 38-250, TM 55-2200-001-12)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a redeployment warning order and the commander has issued redeployment guidance. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the designated AA. All personnel are present or accounted for, weapons and sensitive equipment have been secured, and inventories of vehicles, equipment, and supplies have been conducted. Personnel and equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. The RSOP and redeployment warning order are available.

NOTE: The TAA and RAA may be combined, depending on the size of the theater and the combatant commander's guidance. The redeployment sequence is based on theater constraints and CINC's guidance. Intermediate steps and actions may be required to supplement TAA and RAA movement, to include further defining RAA activities by establishing a final staging area. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Reconstitution for redeployment is coordinated IAW RSOP and commander's guidance and regulations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S1 Section coordinates cross-leveling of personnel. a. Identifies personnel shortages and overages by grade and MOS by reviewing subordinate unit's status reports. b. Reassigns personnel within the battalion IAW commander's guidance. c. Recalculates personnel shortages and overages by grade and MOS. d. Submits personnel requisitions to higher echelon S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications. e. Requests disposition instructions for excess personnel from higher echelon S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Assigns filler personnel IAW S1 guidance. g. Reassigns excess personnel IAW higher echelon S1 Section instructions. h. Updates SIDPERS records, as required. i. Briefs commander and XO on personnel status, as required. 2. S4 Section coordinates cross-leveling of vehicles, equipment, and supplies. a. Identifies shortages and overages by reviewing subordinate unit's vehicle, equipment, and supply status reports. b. Reallocates vehicles, equipment, and supplies within the battalion IAW commander's guidance. c. Recalculates shortages and overages. d. Submits requisitions for vehicles, equipment, and supplies to higher echelon S4 Section using analog and/or digital communications. e. Requests disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies from higher echelon S4 Section. f. Issues vehicles, equipment, and supplies IAW commander and S4's guidance. g. Provides subordinate units disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies. h. Updates property book, as required. i. Briefs commander and XO on status of vehicles, equipment, and supplies, as required. j. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S2/S3 Section

TASK: Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order (63-1-4866) (FM 55-1, FM 100-17, FM 101-5, FM 55-30)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his redeployment guidance and directed that the redeployment movement plan/order be prepared. The XO has assigned staff responsibilities. The S2/3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the redeployment movement plan/order. Movement plan becomes movement order upon implementation. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the TAA. Trained UMOs have been designated and briefed by the S4 and/or ICUMO. The home station rear detachment commander provides information on reception arrangements. The RSOP, TSOP, and higher echelon redeployment movement order are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Redeployment movement plan/order is prepared and distributed IAW regulations, the RSOP, and commander's guidance and within the time frame prescribed by the commander or XO.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Staff sections provide input to the redeployment movement plan/order. a. Identify redeployment requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOPs, and commander's guidance. b. Identify external support requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOP, and status reports from subordinate units. c. Identify internal support requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOP, and commander's guidance. d. Verify availability of required support by coordinating with appropriate battalion elements and/or redeployment support organizations. e. Forward redeployment movement plan/order input information to S2/3 Section.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/3 Section coordinates staffing for redeployment teams. a. Identifies personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates redeployment teams requirements with staff sections. c. Forwards personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams to commander and/or XO for approval or modification. d. Incorporates personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams into movement plan/order. 3. S2/3 Section coordinates TAA and RAA physical security requirements. a. Identifies TAA and RAA physical security requirements by reviewing TSOP, higher echelon redeployment movement order, and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates physical security support with higher echelon S2/3 or supporting logistics support organization using analog and/or digital communications. c. Coordinates physical security requirements with subordinate units. d. Incorporates TAA and RAA physical security instructions into movement plan/order. 4. S2/3 Section coordinates reception at home station. a. Identifies reception requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance. b. Forwards reception requirements and projected personnel movement schedules to home station rear detachment commander. c. Incorporates planned reception arrangements into the movement plan/order.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
5. S2/3 Section prepares movement plan/order. a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Prepares updated copy of movement plan/order. c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification. d. Distributes movement plan/order update IAW movement plan/order distribution list.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Provide Redeployment Support (63-1-4867) (FM 100-17, FM 100-10, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a redeployment movement order. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the TAA and trained UMOs have been designated and briefed by the S4. The battalion commander has issued redeployment guidance. The battalion and higher echelon redeployment movement orders, RSOP, and TSOP are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier.

NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistical and support activities. In this task the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define unit elements remaining in the theater AO after the main body redeploys. Its mission is to process unit equipment and supplies for return to home station. In this task the theater rear detachment is not a theater-level asset. The term "home station rear detachment" is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Redeployment support is provided to subordinate units and coordination for movement of personnel, vehicles, and equipment to the A/SPOE is accomplished IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S1 Section provides personnel and administrative services support. a. Identifies human resources requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. b. Establishes redeployment personnel processing procedures IAW higher echelon guidance. c. Coordinates reassignment of personnel redeploying as individuals with higher echelon S1 using analog and/or digital communications. d. Provides personnel service support, as required. e. Provides administrative support, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Verifies personnel and finance records have been updated by reviewing subordinate unit records. g. Verifies line of duty investigations have been completed prior to redeployment. h. Processes personnel actions, to include evaluation reports and decorations and awards. i. Coordinates (theater) rear detachment human resources support with higher echelon S1 using analog and/or digital communications. j. Coordinates legal services with servicing Staff Judge Advocate's Office. 2. S2/3 Section coordinates training requirements. a. Identifies training requirements (such as weighing and marking, customs inspections, cleaning of vehicles and equipment, and documentation requirements) by reviewing appropriate headquarters redeployment movement order, subordinate unit requests for training support, and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates redeployment training support with higher echelon S2/3 using analog and digital communications. c. Notifies subordinate units of scheduled training events. d. Monitors scheduled training events for compliance with appropriate publications and commander's guidance. e. Updates training records, as required. 3. S4 Section coordinates supply and services support. a. Identifies supply and services support requirements. b. Identifies quantities of supplies on-hand by reviewing subordinate unit supply status reports. c. Identifies supplies due-in by reviewing document registers. d. Identifies excess supplies due-in by comparing supply requirements with quantities on-hand and due-in.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Cancels requisitions for quantities determined to be excess. f. Identifies required supplies arriving after unit is packed for redeployment by coordinating with DS supply organization. g. Verifies all requisitions have been either canceled or updated with a redeployment address ten days prior to redeployment. h. Submits request to redirect supplies due-in after unit is packed to higher echelon S4 or supporting supply activity, as needed. i. Coordinates field feeding and services support with designated support unit, as required. j. Designates date/time when internal supply and service support terminates. k. Provides copies of the unit hand receipts and related documentation to OIC of the (theater) rear detachment, as required. l. Coordinates supply and service support for main body and (theater) rear detachment during movement with higher echelon S4 using analog and digital communications. m. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 4. S4 Section coordinates maintenance support. a. Identifies maintenance support requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. b. Identifies vehicles in organizational and support maintenance by reviewing subordinate unit and battalion maintenance status reports. c. Identifies vehicles available for redeployment by coordinating with battalion and DS maintenance organizations. d. Requests disposition instructions for vehicles and equipment not available for redeployment from higher echelon S4 using analog and/or digital communications. e. Tasks battalion maintenance section to provide MST support in assembly areas, staging areas, and during road movement.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Designates date/time when organizational maintenance support terminates. g. Coordinates maintenance and recovery support beyond unit's capability with higher echelon S4 or supporting logistics support organization using analog and digital communications. h. Coordinates vehicle cleaning and support with higher echelon S4 or supporting logistics support organization using analog and/or digital communications. i. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. *5. S4 coordinates redeployment movement. a. Identifies redeployment movement requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. b. Verifies UMD and movement schedules, routes, and location of RAA and staging areas by coordinating with movement control element. c. Develops milestones for planning, packing, loading, and movement operations IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. d. Coordinates customs and USDA inspection support with higher echelon S4. e. Monitors supporting units AUEL updates for compliance with redeployment movement order and RSOP. f. Monitors subordinate unit's preparation of movement, customs, and USDA forms for compliance with redeployment movement order, RSOP, and appropriate publications. g. Monitors supporting unit's vehicle and equipment preparation and cleaning for compliance with USDA guidance, RSOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. h. Monitors subordinate unit's customs and USDA inspection results for compliance with appropriate publications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Monitors subordinate unit's movement readiness status for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. j. Inspects subordinate unit's movement plans/orders for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. k. Briefs commander and/or staff on movement readiness status, as required. l. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S2/S3 Section

TASK: Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities (63-1-4868) (FM 100-17, FM 101-5, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a redeployment movement order. All subordinate units are redeploying as part of the battalion redeployment. The movement plan/order, RSOP, and TSOP are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the redeploying support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. Logistics support is provided to the advance party by the supporting MACOM. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance party operations are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section plans advance party operations. a. Identifies advance party requirements by reviewing movement order, RSOP, TSOP, and commander's guidance. b. Prepares advance party plan IAW commander's guidance. c. Coordinates advance party personnel and equipment requirements with staff sections and subordinate units IAW advance party plan. d. Briefs advance party OIC on advance party requirements and operations. *2. Advance party OIC supervises advance party premovement activities. a. Identifies advance party support requirements by reviewing advance party plan, movement plan/order, RSOP, and S2/3 and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates advance party logistics and transportation support with the S4 Section. c. Coordinates for advance party movement instructions and documentation support with HHC UMO.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Identifies battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination by reviewing movement plan/order and subordinate unit DELs. e. Revises advance party plan, as required, in coordination with S2/3. f. Briefs commander, staff, subordinate unit commanders, and advance party personnel on advance party plan, as required. 3. Advance party moves through APOE to APOD. a. Prepares vehicles for air movement, as required. b. Deploys IAW movement order. c. Performs APOD activities for redeployment. 4. Advance party coordinates reception of main body. a. Coordinates main body arrival schedule and reception with AACG. b. Coordinates inspection and processing procedures with USCS and USDA officials. c. Coordinates for movement of personnel to home station with MTMC, supporting ITO, and/or movement control element representatives. d. Provides battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to MTMC representatives, supporting installation representatives, and home station UMC. e. Completes required movement documentation IAW MTMC, supporting ITO, and/or movement control element representatives. f. Coordinates main body logistics and maintenance support requirements with supporting installation, as required. g. Assists home station rear detachment with final coordination for welcome home reception activities. h. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on reception and onward movement plans, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Command Section

TASK: Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities (63-1-4869) (FM 100-17, FM 55-65, TM 38-250, TM 55-2200-001-12)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion and subordinate unit main bodies have redeployed. The rear detachment is located in the RAA with the battalion's vehicles and equipment. Vehicles and equipment are prepared for strategic sea movement and are waiting to be called forward to the PSA. S4 has provided copies of the unit hand receipts, document register, and related documents. MCA/MCT provides call forward instructions to the APOE and SPOE. The RSOP, TSOP, redeployment movement order, and (theater) rear detachment plan are available. The (theater) rear detachment continuously receives messages from the theater support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and battalion HQ by analog and/or digital means of communications, automation systems, and courier.

NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistical and support activities. In this task the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define the rear detachment remaining in the theater AO after the main body redeploys. Its mission is to process unit equipment and supplies for return to home station. In this task the theater rear detachment is not a theater-level asset. The term "home station rear detachment " is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit's vehicles and equipment are transferred to the PSA and (theater) rear detachment personnel redeploy to home station IAW the (theater) rear detachment plan and redeployment movement order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. (Theater) rear detachment commander supervises (theater) rear detachment activities. a. Identifies operational and support requirements by reviewing (theater) rear detachment plan; redeployment movement order; S1/ S4 guidance, and commander's guidance. b. Verifies availability of personnel services, administrative services, legal support, and logistics support by coordinating with supporting organizations. c. Develops an inspection and maintenance schedule IAW (theater) rear detachment plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Monitors levels of personnel, administrative, legal, and logistics support to ensure appropriate levels of support are provided. e. Directs correction of deficiencies noted during USCS and/or USDA inspections. f. Inspects movement and property accountability documentation to verify accuracy IAW (theater) rear detachment plan and appropriate publications. g. Forwards (theater) rear detachment status reports to battalion HQ, as required. h. Briefs commander and/or staff of supporting logistics support organization on (theater) rear detachment activities, as required. 2. (Theater) rear detachment coordinates logistics support. a. Identifies repair parts requirements by reviewing maintenance inspection reports and the document register. b. Identifies supply requirements by conducting inventory of supplies on-hand. c. Forwards requisitions for required supplies and repair parts to supporting logistics support organization. d. Coordinates receipt of supplies and repair parts with the supporting logistics support organization. e. Coordinates field feeding and billeting support with the supporting logistics support organization. 3. (Theater) rear detachment maintains vehicles and equipment. a. Inspects vehicles and equipment IAW inspection and maintenance schedule. b. Prepares requisitions for repair parts, as required. c. Performs operator and organizational maintenance, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Coordinates MST support with supporting logistics support organization. e. Cleans vehicles to meet USDA requirements. 4. (Theater) rear detachment coordinates movement of vehicles, equipment, and personnel. a. Coordinates processing of vehicles and equipment for movement to the SPOE with MCA/MCT and PSA. b. Coordinates redeployment of personnel and processing procedures with MCA/PMCT and DACG. c. Monitors customs and USDA inspections for compliance with the redeployment movement order and appropriate publications. d. Monitors joint PSA inspection to ensure vehicles and equipment meet requirements for strategic sealift. e. Processes vehicles and equipment for movement to the SPOE. f. Redeploys personnel IAW MCA/PMCT and DACG instructions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Home Station Activities (63-1-4870) (FM 100-17, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has arrived at home station. Main body arrives at home station prior to equipment arrival at SPOD. The battalion receives notification of ship and (theater) rear detachment arrival from the ITO. The maintenance SOP and RSOP are available. The ITO provides movement instructions and convoy clearances. The supporting installation provides intransit logistics support. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation agencies and subordinate units by analog and/or digital means of communication, automation systems, and courier.

NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistical and support activities. In this task the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define the rear detachment remaining in the theater AO after the main body redeploys. The term "home station rear detachment" is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Home station activities are accomplished IAW commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commander directs post deployment activities. a. Directs preparation of after-action reports. b. Directs inventory and cleaning of vehicles, equipment, and weapons. c. Directs turn-in of hand-receipted and float equipment. d. Approves after-action report. e. Briefs appropriate HQ commander and staff on operations in theater of operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S1 Section performs post deployment activities. a. Coordinates personal affairs briefings, such as family and stress briefings. b. Verifies records of deployed soldiers have been updated with deployment information and appropriate personnel actions. c. Processes SIDPERS transactions for redeploying soldiers, if required. d. Coordinates welcome home activities for (theater) rear detachment personnel. e. Maintains personnel assets visibility. 3. S4 Section coordinates reception of rear detachment. a. Coordinates transportation support for (theater) rear detachment personnel with ITO. b. Verifies arrival schedule and processing requirements by coordinating with AACG. c. Resolves inspection and processing deficiencies by coordinating with MTMC, USCS, and USDA officials. d. Briefs commander and XO on status of rear detachment reception. 4. S4 Section coordinates reception of equipment at SPOE. a. Identifies transportation requirements by reviewing RSOP, redeployment movement order, and subordinate unit DELs. b. Verifies rail and/or commercial transportation availability and schedules for containers and outsize, oversize, or overweight pieces of equipment by coordinating with the UMC. c. Coordinates for convoy clearances with the UMC, as required. d. Submits request(s) for required road march items to supporting supply activity.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Coordinates subordinate units en route support requirements with UMC until all known requirements are fulfilled. f. Coordinates transportation support for battalion personnel to the SPOD with the UMC. g. Conducts movement status briefing(s) for the commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as necessary. *5. IC-UMO coordinates SPOD MA activities. NOTE: Digitally equipped units will provide reports using FBCB2 or MCS, as appropriate. a. Monitors inventory, inspection, processing, and staging of vehicles and equipment for compliance with movement instructions, convoy clearances, and MTMC and PSA officials' instructions. b. Resolves vehicle and equipment inspection and processing deficiencies by coordinating with PSA, USCS, and USDA officials. c. Coordinates disposition of nonoperational vehicles with supporting installation personnel. d. Reports SPOD status by telephone or radio to S2/S3 Section, as appropriate. e. Provides SP crossing report by telephone or radio to S2/S3 Section, as appropriate. 6. S4 Section monitors stand-down of vehicles, equipment, and weapons. a. Monitors inventory and maintenance status of vehicles, equipment, and weapons for compliance with maintenance SOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. b. Provides vehicle and equipment technical inspection and excess equipment instructions to subordinate units. c. Monitors vehicle and equipment turn-in for compliance with appropriate publications and S4 instructions. d. Briefs commander and XO on status of vehicles, equipment, and weapons.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
7. S2/S3 Section drafts after-action report. a. Verifies staff and subordinate unit input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Prepares after-action report. c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification. d. Distributes after-action report IAW commander's guidance.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Direct Integration Activities (63-1-4871) (FM 100-17-3, FM 100-17, FM 3-0, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is in the process of deploying following receipt of an OPORD. The unit has arrived at the POD, moved through the designated marshaling area/staging site, and has closed in the TAA. Prior to onward movement from the staging area, the unit verified that it met mission readiness criteria. The unit initiates command and control procedures with the gaining command. The unit security plan, unit access rosters, TSOP, and current maps are available. The unit is deploying as part of a higher echelon deployment. Integration activities are performed under all day and night environmental conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel and equipment are combat ready and integrated into the operational mission of the gaining tactical force commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commander supervises integration activities. a. Directs TOC to be established IAW TSOP. b. Directs analog and/or digital communications link-up into gaining command net. c. Directs unit HQ to integrate unit security plan into gaining command's operational force protection measure. d. Directs unit HQ to integrate into the gaining command's CSS system. e. Directs unit HQ to submit reports IAW gaining command SOPs/OPLANs. f. Provides guidance to staff on corrective actions based on readiness reports from subordinate units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Releases consolidated battalion readiness report to higher HQ. h. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 2. S2/3 Section completes operations integration actions. a. Enters tactical analog and/or digital communication nets. b. Establishes battalion TOC. c. Integrates unit into TAA security plan. d. Directs stationing of subordinate units within assigned area. e. Clarifies operational mission parameters with gaining command. f. Assists subordinate units in correcting readiness deficiencies. g. Submits required reports to gaining command. h. Conducts training as directed by gaining command. 3. S1 Section performs personnel integration activities. a. Submits consolidated personnel status report to higher HQ. b. Monitors status of soldiers with a special status, such as sick or injured. c. Requests replacements, as needed. d. Coordinates medical, personnel, religious, morale, welfare and recreation, legal, and finance support. 4. S4 Section performs logistics integration activities. a. Establishes direct support relationships with various support elements in the support structure to include supply, field services, automation maintenance, and maintenance. b. Provides subordinate units CSS support information, to include location of supply and maintenance points, field service support information, and procedures for resupply.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Submits logistics status report in format directed by gaining command. d. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 5. Communication personnel performs information technology integration activities for radio and tactical automation. a. Establishes direct support relationship with gaining command for COMSEC and system/software security materiel. b. Installs, operates, and maintains local area networks. c. Establishes and operates battalion NCS. d. Ensures analog and digital communications linkup with higher, adjacent, and supported commands. e. Selects signal sites and provides advice on interference problems.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Plan Battalion Deployment in a Peacetime Environment (63-1-4872) (FM 100-17, FM 101-5, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The higher HQ is operating in a normal peacetime environment at a normal state of readiness. The unit has a wartime mission with a corresponding OPLAN on file. Unit is conducting operational mission and METL training. The unit MOBPLAN (RC), movement plan, recall plan, RSOP, TSOP, security plan, unit access rosters, and current maps are available. The OPLAN calls for higher HQ subordinate units to deploy as part of the higher HQ deployment. The higher HQ communicates with subordinate units by analog and/or digital means of communications, automation systems, and courier. Peacetime deployment planning activities are performed under all day and night environmental conditions, except NBC.

NOTE: MOBPLANs are required only for RC units. RC-specific task steps and performance measures are annotated "(RC)". This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: MOBPLAN (RC) and movement plan are completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commander directs deployment planning. a. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units. b. Directs S2/3 to update OPLAN. c. Directs S2/3 to validate MOBPLAN (RC). d. Directs S2/3 to validate subordinate units' movement plans. e. Directs security officer to update security plan. f. Directs XO to update RSOP and TSOP. g. Directs S1 to verify SRP activities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*2. XO coordinates staff planning. a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making. b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating movement/deployment plans. c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance. d. Coordinates deployment mission with subordinate unit commanders. e. Coordinates update of RSOP and TSOP. f. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing. 3. S2/S3 Section analyzes mission. a. Identifies specified and implied tasks in the OPLAN. b. Identifies documented policies and procedures. c. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ. d. Coordinates with S1 Section for personnel analysis of mission. e. Coordinates with S4 Section for logistics and movement analysis of missions. f. Updates higher HQ OPLAN. g. Maintains current maps and overlays for all missions for subordinate units. h. Approves MOBPLANs (RC) for subordinate units. i. Briefs commander and staff on deployment mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
4. Staff Sections conduct readiness review of subordinate units. a. Provide personnel readiness review. b. Perform logistics readiness review. c. Perform OPSEC readiness review. d. Identify readiness issues. e. Provide recommendations to improve readiness. f. Update higher HQ RSOP and TSOP. g. Coordinate with supporting active duty readiness organization for support (RC). 5. S2/S3 Section validates MOBPLAN (RC). a. Verifies mission is current. b. Updates MOBPLAN. c. Confirms annex information is correct. d. Coordinates with S4 for review of logistics portions of plan. NOTE: MOBPLAN is updated annually or whenever a change occurs in unit mission or structure. 6. S4 Section validates deployment plans. a. Maintains movement plans for all modes of transportation for the higher HQ. b. Validates equipment status. c. Validates AUEL for subordinate units. d. Coordinates for S2/3 review of subordinate units and higher HQ movement plans. e. Verifies logistics annexes of MOBPLAN (RC).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
7. Staff officers supervise staff sections. a. Direct sections to update RSOP, TSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLAN, and commander's guidance annually or whenever changes in unit mission or structure dictate. b. Verify section input for annual commander's mobilization brief. c. Direct preparation of input to the S2/3 Section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's brief, as required. d. Identify section requirements for deployment verification checklist.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
Communications Section

TASK: Supervise Operations Security Program (63-1-4038) (AR 530-1, AR 380-19, AR 380-19-1, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 3-5)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion operations have commenced. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents have been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Threat may be in the form of conventional or unconventional forces and have the capability of intelligence gathering. OPSEC program is a passive defensive measure. The supporting rear operations element coordinates OPSEC activity throughout the rear area. Higher HQ OPSEC estimate is available. OPSEC teams identify OPSEC weakness and risks by examining unit and CP communications, signatures, tactical deployment patterns, and camouflage. This information with recommended countermeasures is disseminated to the battalion through the higher HQ or supported unit. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and all levels of threat forces attacks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The OPSEC program is planned and implemented IAW OPORD and TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase OPSEC planning and implementation time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section plans OPSEC program for current operations. a. Identifies established policies and procedures by reviewing TSOP. b. Lists enemy intelligence collection capabilities by extracting information from the higher HQ OPSEC estimates or annex. c. Lists EEFI from higher HQ OPSEC estimate or annex. d. Lists indicators that affect or may compromise the EEFI. e. Lists all countermeasure requirements by reviewing higher HQ OPSEC estimate or annex and the battalion's operations profile.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Prepares battalion's OPSEC plan. NOTE: OPSEC plan should implement CP policies and procedures to overcome or neutralize the enemy's ability to collect information in the areas of communications, intelligence, logistics, and administrative actions. g. Disseminates OPSEC plan to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications. h. Conducts continuous intelligence preparation of the battlefield. 2. S2/3 and Commo Sections implement OPSEC plan. NOTE: This task step must be performed completely by the S2/3 Section when there is no S6 Section in the TO&E. a. Enforce COMSEC measures to deny friendly information to the enemy by telecommunication means. b. Enforce ELSEC measures to protect electromagnetic transmissions from enemy identification or location. c. Enforce compromising emanations controls to render enemy detection devices ineffective. d. Enforce ECCM to ensure the battalion's receipt and transmission of information, essential to mission accomplishment, is not disrupted. e. Enforce information security measures to prevent compromise of classified and unclassified information. f. Enforce physical security measures to prevent espionage, sabotage, or theft at command and control or support facilities. g. Control usage of passwords for subordinate and attached units. h. Install anti virus software on automation equipment for subordinate and attached units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
3. S2/3 and Commo Sections provide feedback on status of OPSEC program. NOTE: This task step must be performed completely by the S2/3 Section when there is no S6 Section in the TO&E. a. Inspect subordinate units' positions for OPSEC effectiveness. b. Inspect battalion's camouflage and concealment measures for compliance with TSOP, OPORD, and current tactical situation. c. Identify OPSEC weakness and recommended corrections by continuously reviewing higher HQ OPSEC updates. d. Coordinate additional support requirements with higher HQ or the supporting unit using analog and digital communications. e. Provide feedback report to commander, staff, and subordinate elements on OPSEC effectiveness measures using analog and digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations (63-1-4040) (FM 3-4, FM 100-10, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-3, FM 3-5)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion operations have commenced. Subordinate units have been deployed. The commander and staff require updated NBC data for current operations and future planning. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The S2/3 is required to provide command and control of subordinate units during NBC intrusions. Isolated NBC incidents have occurred. Some operational areas have reported contamination. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Support is maintained at a level that allows the supported units to sustain momentum of operations. NBC defense measures are conducted IAW NBC defense plan, TSOP, and OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time required to implement NBC defense operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section develops NBC defense plan. a. Identifies established policies and procedures by reviewing NBC defense portion of the TSOP. b. Identifies NBC threat and recommended countermeasures by analyzing the higher HQ vulnerability analysis and assessment. c. Prepares an NBC defense requirement forecast. d. Coordinates medical mass casualty evacuation and treatment support with the S1 Section and supporting medical element. e. Coordinates alternate methods of conducting support mission with the Support Operations Section. f. Coordinates alternate lines of communications with S6 or communications personnel.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Coordinates additional and augmented decontamination support with higher HQ staff element using analog and digital communications. h. Develops NBC defense item consumption plan for increased demand. i. Develops personnel, equipment, and facilities decontamination plan. j. Disseminates NBC defense plan to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications. k. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 2. S2/3 Section directs preparation for NBC defense. a. Identifies backup command and control procedures. b. Alerts all NBC defense teams and subordinate companies of impending or actual attack. c. Maintains NBC analog/digital situation map(s) to include potential enemy NBC targets, decontamination site overlays, and predicted contamination overlay. d. Directs periodic monitoring by subordinate units of their assigned areas. e. Directs appropriate MOPP level. f. Directs preparation for receiving NBC decontamination augmentations. g. Directs redeployment of units and facilities. h. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 3. S2/3 Section directs response to initial effects of NBC attack. a. Revises MOPP level as necessary. b. Alerts higher, lower, adjacent units of imminent attack using analog and digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Reestablishes chains of command and communication, as required. d. Assesses damage to equipment and facilities by analyzing reports from subordinate units. e. Coordinates assistance for subordinate units with higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications. f. Alerts MA and EPW collection points and aid stations of NBC hazards. g. Forwards NBC 1 and subsequent NBC 1 reports to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications. h. Computes yield and ground zero location. i. Prepares downwind hazard prediction. j. Prepares simplified fallout prediction. k. Forwards NBC 6 report to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element, as appropriate, using analog and/or digital communications. l. Provides current status of augmented chemical unit employment, protective measures, and MOPP and OEG implementation to the HQ staff. m. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 4. S2/3 Section directs response to residual effects of NBC attack. a. Plots NBC 4 report on situation map. b. Forwards NBC 4 report to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element. c. Maintains radiation exposure status. d. Prepares analog/digital contamination overlay(s). e. Predicts contamination duration period.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Plots NBC 3 report on analog/digital situation map. g. Briefs NBC implications to commander and staff. h. Lists restoration decontamination requirements. i. Recommends survey requirements to S2/3 and HQ NBC element. j. Coordinates for replacement of chemical personnel and mass casualty handling procedures with the S1 Section. k. Coordinates clearing of obstacles and the use of chemical weapons in denial operations with the supporting engineer and the supporting rear operations elements. l. Directs revised MOPP level as required. m. Coordinates acquisition, storage, and issue of NBC equipment and supplies with the S4 Section. n. Updates NBC defense contingency plan. o. Provides current status of augmented chemical unit employment, protective measures, and MOPP and OEG implementation to the HQ staff. p. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 5. S2/3 Section directs preparation for a friendly NBC strike. a. Identifies specific actions by analyzing STRIKEWARN message. b. Provides current situation briefing to commander. c. Directs subordinate units to implement NBC defense protective measures using analog and/or digital communications. d. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
6. S2/3 Section directs radiological and chemical surveys. a. Selects survey techniques. b. Tasks units to provide team(s). c. Formulates turnback dose and dose rates. d. Prepares overlays and/or strip maps to destination point(s). e. Briefs survey team(s) on current situation and information requirements. f. Recommends COA to S2/3 after analyzing survey team(s) data. g. Lists decontamination requirements. h. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 7. S2/3 Section directs radiological and chemical decontamination. a. Identifies degree and extent of hazard(s). b. Establishes an acceptable level of decontamination IAW commander's guidance. c. Directs MOPP gear exchange. d. Identifies areas and facilities for sustainment decontamination. e. Supervises marking of contaminated runoff areas. f. Updates battalion and subordinate units' radiation status. g. Requests replenishment of NBC decontamination equipment and supplies from S4 Section. h. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
8. S2/3 Section coordinates hasty decontamination. a. Directs before-operations PMCS on vehicles and equipment. b. Identifies contaminated locations and routes to be taken. c. Coordinates set up assistance with subordinate units and site supervisor. d. Forwards SITREP to higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using analog and digital communications. e. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 9. S2/3 Section coordinates for detailed equipment and personnel decontamination. a. Coordinates with higher and lower units using analog and/or digital communications. b. Coordinates additional support with higher HQ staff element and/or supporting rear operations element. c. Coordinates with Support Operations Section for decontamination priorities of service support facilities. d. Directs NBC augmentations to designated area. e. Monitors decontamination operations to ensure priority guidance is being followed. f. Provides decontamination status updates to the commander and supporting rear operations element. g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Conduct Command Religious Support Program (16-1-1001.63) (FM 16-1, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 3-5)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Requests for religious support have been received. Support operations have commenced. Casualties have occurred. The battalion TSOP and OPORD are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command and soldier religious support needs are met IAW the TSOP, OPORD, and command directives. At MOPP 4, performance degradation factors increase time of religious support activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Unit Ministry Team develops a religious support plan. a. Lists the religious needs of the battalion based on commander's guidance. b. Establishes religious support priorities. c. Coordinates direct and general religious support with higher HQ ministry activity. d. Provides staff sections with required input for plans and orders. e. Consolidates input to the religious support plan from other staff sections. f. Prepares the battalion religious support plan. g. Disseminates plan to all subordinate units. 2. Unit Ministry Team provides religious support, to include rites and services. a. Monitors casualty data to determine required religious services. b. Provides worship services, memorial ceremonies, services for the dead, sacraments, rites, and ordinances.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Conducts mass or emergency burials IAW current regulations and directives. d. Provides support to battalion headquarters personnel. e. Requests supplies and additional transportation requirements from S4 Section. 3. Unit Ministry Team provides pastoral care to soldiers. a. Provides pastoral care that counters battlefield shock and trauma. b. Conducts pastoral counseling that lessens stress and enhance morale. c. Provides religious support for battle fatigue cases. d. Conducts specialized counseling that enhances morale. e. Provides routine pastoral care and counseling to all battalion soldiers. f. Conducts pastoral care to casualties at battle site(s). *4. Chaplain advises the commander on unit morale, moral climate, and religious welfare. a. Provides information on morale and moral climate of the battalion that has been personally verified. b. Briefs commander on moral and humanitarian aspects of policies and procedures. c. Notifies commander immediately of policies perceived as unjust by soldiers. d. Notifies commander of disruptive and potential disruptive social patterns. e. Notifies commander of possible violations of the laws of war. f. Advises commander on policies or procedures affecting soldier rights to the free exercise of religion.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*5. Chaplain advises the commander on ethical issues. a. Advises the commander on specific methods of improving the ethical climate within the battalion. b. Briefs commander on ethical aspects of policies and leadership. c. Briefs the commander on soldier training in ethical and moral decision making. d. Emphasizes value of human life, justice, dignity, and truth through sermons, pastoral counseling, and ethical or moral instruction. e. Performs duties as ethical advocate to the commander in the prevention of dehumanizing treatment of friendly troops, EPW and civilians, the violation of codes of morality, illegal acts, desecration of sacred places, and disrespect for human life. 6. Unit Ministry Team provides information on indigenous religions. a. Advises the commander of the impact of indigenous religion(s) in the battalion's mission. b. Advises the commander in developing friendly relations with local religious bodies and civilians. c. Identifies human welfare needs caused by combat on indigenous population. d. Coordinates alleviation of human welfare needs with HN military and civilians religious institutions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Internal Logistics (63-1-4025) (AR 710-2, AR 220-1, DA PAM 710-2-2, FM 10-27-4, FM 3-100.4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion support operations have commenced. Logistics requirements are being generated within the battalion. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. SCPE is on hand for use if required by the S4 Section. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and all levels of threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion internal supply, maintenance, field services, and transportation operations are coordinated IAW the TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase operational completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S4 Section coordinates battalion maintenance operations. a. Consolidates subordinate units' maintenance reports to analyze overall battalion equipment readiness. b. Provides equipment status reports to commander and other staff sections for mission planning purposes. c. Monitors maintenance management system automated data output to assist in forecasting requirements and analyzing performance indicators. d. Coordinates current or anticipated maintenance problems with other staff sections and subordinate units using CSSCS. e. Monitors subordinate units PLL to ensure levels are consistent with requirements established in the TSOP. f. Coordinates recovery and evacuation assets with subordinate units to ensure the timely recovery and evacuation of all battalion equipment using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Monitors controlled substitution program within the battalion to ensure compliance with guidance and priorities established by the commander. h. Coordinates priority of maintenance efforts and repair time guidelines with the S2/3 and Support Operations Section and subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications. i. Provides current material readiness briefing to commander and XO, as required. j. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. k. Conducts logistics preparation of the battlefield. 2. S4 Section coordinates battalion supply activities. a. Monitors subordinate units' supply operations to ensure compliance with TSOP and applicable regulations. b. Processes requests for replenishing basic loads to verify requirements and accuracy. c. Maintains data on available usage and required rates of Class III and V. d. Monitors Class V resupply activities of subordinate units to ensure compliance with established issue controls. e. Monitors battalion Class III resupply activities to ensure compliance with established issue controls. f. Coordinates schedules and methods of distribution between subordinate and supporting units using analog and/or digital communications. g. Coordinates receipt and disposition of captured enemy equipment with S2/3 Section. h. Maintains property book records of subordinate elements and any separate elements operating in the battalion area of responsibility. i. Records adjustments, issues, turn-ins, property losses, and status reports using SPBS-R programs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
j. Calculates consumption rates for MOPP gear and decontamination supplies. k. Manages items on the commander's tracked items list. l. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 3. S4 Section coordinates battalion services. a. Forwards battalion field feeding plan to all organic and attached elements using analog and digital communications. b. Inspects subordinate units' field fielding operations and ration storage areas to ensure compliance with feeding plan and sanitation regulations. c. Coordinates field service requirements for all subordinate units with higher HQ staff element or supporting field services element using analog and digital communications. d. Designates salvage collection points. e. Controls evacuation of salvage IAW TSOP, OPORD, and commander's directives. f. Submits requests for MA items to higher HQ staff element or supporting MA element using analog and digital communications. g. Coordinates water requirements for all subordinate units with higher HQ staff element or supporting water element using analog and/or digital communications. h. Provides food service and field services status briefing to the Support Operations Section and commander, as required. i. Coordinates field services requirement for all battalion units through the S3/Support Operation Section (Support Squadron ACR Only). j. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
4. S4 Section coordinates battalion transportation requirements. a. Consolidates transportation requirements for all subordinate units. b. Coordinates battalion administrative transportation requirements with higher HQ staff element or supporting movement control element using analog and/or digital communications. c. Requests road clearances for movement of supplies, equipment, or personnel from supporting movement control element using analog and/or digital communications. d. Coordinates transportation for EPW evacuation with the supporting MP element in coordination with S2/3 Section. e. Coordinates transportation assets for evacuation and hospitalization of casualties resulting from NBC warfare with S2/3 Section. f. Updates load plans for the battalion HQ in coordination with the HQ company commander. g. Inspects subordinate units' load plans to ensure compliance with TSOP and commander's directives. h. Provides internal transportation status report to commander and XO, as required. i. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO/NO GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
03-5106.00-0166	Prepare Command Logistics Plans, Estimates, and Orders	STP 10-92ABDII-MQS
03-5503.00-0006	Supervise Laundry and Bath Operations	STP 10-92ABDII-MQS
091-564-0001	Advise Commander on Employment of Maintenance Units	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 9-63Z5-SM-TG
091-564-0002	Advise Commander on Employment of Maintenance Units	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 9-63Z5-SM-TG
091-564-0003	Monitor Supported Units' Materiel Condition Status	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 9-63Z5-SM-TG
091-564-0004	Execute a Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR) Program	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 9-63Z5-SM-TG
091-564-0005	Execute the Army Warranty Program	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 9-63Z5-SM-TG
091-564-0006	Conduct Maintenance Inspections and Staff Visits	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 9-63Z5-SM-TG
091-564-0007	Enforce Army Safety Program	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 9-63Z5-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section

TASK: Provide Human Resources Support - Administrative Services (63-1-4043)
(AR 600-8-1, AR 27-10, AR 600-8-22, DA PAM 600-8-1,
DD MANUAL 4525.6-M, FM 12-6, FM 14-100)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Support operations have stabilized. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Administrative support activities have increased. Subordinate units are requesting morale, welfare, and recreation support. The unit, higher and lower TSOPs are available. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All administrative actions are processed and forwarded IAW TSOP and OPORD within the time prescribed. All morale support resources are employed in a manner that enhances and sustains soldier morale within the battalion. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increases time required to perform administrative actions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S1 Section provides mail service. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications. b. Maintains current locations of all subordinate units. c. Collects mail from supporting postal activity for all subordinate units. d. Sorts mail by unit and location. e. Delivers all mail to subordinate units. f. Returns all undelivered mail to supporting postal activity.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S1 Section operates distribution center. a. Collects correspondence from all subordinate units. b. Forwards all correspondence to appropriate elements. c. Secures classified materials IAW local directives and TSOP. 3. S1 Section processes promotion recommendations. a. Forwards all promotion requests to higher HQ S1 Section and servicing personnel elements using analog and/or digital communications. b. Maintains suspense file on all forwarded promotion actions. 4. S1 Section administers awards program. a. Inspects incoming award recommendations for accuracy and completeness. b. Forwards all recommendations to higher HQ and supporting personnel elements using analog and/or digital communications. c. Maintains suspense file on all award recommendations. 5. S1 Section (Legal Specialist) provides legal support and processes UMCJ actions. a. Prepares flagging actions requested by subordinate units. b. Processes flagging actions from subordinate units. c. Ensures the commander has Article 15 authority over the offense and accused IAW the UCMJ. d. Prepares judicial and nonjudicial proceedings documents. e. Coordinates with the commander to ensure that evidence supports resolution of the alleged violation of the Uniform Code of Military Justice. f. Coordinates with the detailed Judge Advocate to ensure evidence supports resolution of the violation of the Uniform Code of military Justice.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Coordinates judicial acts with subordinate commanders. h. Forwards all documents to higher HQ S1 Section using analog and digital communications. i. Processes all appeals. 6. S1 Section processes personnel and finance actions and SIDPERS transactions. a. Verifies changes for accuracy and completeness. b. Prepares SIDPERS input data. c. Forwards all completed actions to higher HQ S1 Section and supporting personnel servicing element using analog and/or digital communications. d. Reports SIDPERS disposition to initiating unit(s) using analog and digital communications. 7. S1 Section performs administrative functions. a. Maintains leave control log. b. Maintains duty rosters. c. Prepares military correspondences. d. Maintains required functional files. e. Forwards all recurring reports to appropriate elements IAW TSOP and OPORD. f. Maintains required regulations, publications, and SOPs IAW TSOP. g. Provides reproduction services. 8. S1 Section provides MWR support. a. Identifies subordinate MWR requirements. b. Identifies supporting MWR capabilities and resources allocated to the battalion.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Provides recommendation to the commander on prioritization of MWR support to subordinate units. d. Coordinates MWR support deliveries IAW the commander's priorities. 9. S1 Section Coordinates external MWR support. a. Coordinates for newspapers, books, magazines, and other publications with higher HQ S1 Section. b. Coordinates for personal sundry items with the supporting supply element. c. Coordinates for musical, tactical PX, rest, and recuperation support with higher HQ S1 Section. d. Coordinates motion pictures and other entertainment with higher HQ S1 Section. e. Coordinates MWR support using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures (63-1-4303) (FM 22-51, AR 385-10, FM 100-14, FM 3-4, FM 6-22.5)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Operations have commenced and are continuous over a prolonged period of time causing stressful situations for staff personnel. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The commander has directed that battlefield stress management procedures be implemented. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion applies techniques that counter degradation of morale, training, and physical condition of battalion staff personnel in performance of the mission. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase implementation time of stress prevention measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commanders and leaders perform stress prevention actions. a. Issue warning orders, OPORDs and FRAGOs to the lowest possible level using analog and/or digital communications or BFACS. b. Provide entire staff an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations. c. Brief commander's intentions to all battalion staff personnel. d. Speak positively concerning the battalion's missions, purpose, and abilities. e. Encourage a positive attitude throughout the battalion staff. f. Employ an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors. g. Inform personnel of availability of religious support.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*2. Commander and leaders implement sleep plan. a. Coordinate with HQ company for a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities. b. Develop sleep plan. c. Adjust sleep plan as dictated by tactical situation. *3. Staff element leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures. a. Cross-train staff personnel on all critical tasks. b. Develop a plan for rotation of staff personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assign two staff members to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy. d. Adjust task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation. *4. Staff element leaders implement stress-coping and management techniques. a. Integrate new members into the staff elements immediately. b. Implement a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among staff members and leaders. c. Provide instruction on relaxation techniques to all staff personnel. d. Conduct routine after-action stress briefings. *5. Commander and leaders implement treatment techniques. a. Develop a plan to deal with mild, seriously-stressed, or BF cases. b. Assign staff members who show signs of stress or BF to simple tasks. c. Direct staff members to be supportive of BF or stressed personnel.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Direct movement of staff members showing no signs of improvement to supporting medical facilities. e. Refer for medical evaluation those staff members showing signs of serious stress or BF. f. Reintegrate RTD staff members into their specific element or section. 6. Staff personnel employ stress prevention measures. a. Maintain a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities. b. Comply with the commander's sleep plan. c. Identify signs of stress or BF in other staff members. d. Provide immediate buddy aid support. e. Report signs of stress or BF of other staff members to immediate supervisor. f. Accept new unit members immediately. g. Practice relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. h. Participate in buddy system and after-action stress debriefings.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Perform Risk Management Procedures (63-1-4326) (FM 100-14, AR 385-10, FM 101-5, FM 3-3, FM 3-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Safety hazards for personnel and equipment exist. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital/analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The unit is deployed in a tactical environment supporting combat operations. Hazards increase as operations intensify. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All potential safety problems for tasks are identified and either reduced or eliminated. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase risk management implementation times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commander and leaders identify risk or safety hazards. a. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPLAN/OPORD or FRAGO. b. Identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks. c. Integrate safety into every phase of the planning process. d. Identify the benefits of safety measures to the unit's mission versus the potential cost of risk or safety hazards. e. Conduct continuous assessment of phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*2. Commander and leaders evaluate risk or safety hazards identified during operations. a. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and their corrective actions. b. Identify all unwarranted risks. c. Compare identified risk to the commander's acceptable risk level based on stated training objectives. d. Calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records. e. Describe operations in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low). f. Prepare COA that minimizes risk. *3. Commander and leaders eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards. a. Select COA that maximizes the operation and minimizes the risk. b. Develop procedures that reduce risk. c. Provide guidance that enhances safety in all phases of operation. d. Prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhances safety and reduces risks. 4. Unit personnel employ safety procedures. a. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations. b. Correct unsafe acts on the spot. c. Report all risk and safety violations to commander and the battalion safety officer using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Supervise Establishment of Truck Terminal or Trailer Transfer Point (55-1-0015) (FM 55-30)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The TSOP and OPORD are available. The TT or TTP may be established in a field or MOUT environment. Equipment and personnel are available to establish the TT or TTP. The task is performed simultaneously with other Higher HQ'S establishment tasks. Higher HQ'S would not set up in a contaminated area. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The TT or TTP is established according to the TSOP and the OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Higher HQ establishes site for TT AO. a. Performs map and ground reconnaissance of proposed truck terminal site that satisfies all mission requirements. b. Identifies size, complexity, and duration of operations. c. Identifies the number and type of vehicles being used. d. Identifies ample space for parking and marshaling of incoming or outgoing semitrailers and prime movers. e. Identifies areas for required parking, maintenance, field feeding, POL service, billeting areas, and other internal support as required. f. Identifies areas for semitrailer backlog. g. Establishes internal road net and traffic pattern. h. Positions truck terminal near supported activities and the operating road net. 2. Higher HQ establishes site for TTP AO. a. Performs map and ground reconnaissance. b. Selects trailer transfer site that satisfies all mission requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Selects TTPs based on optimum leg distance that can be covered and a return trip made to origin in one 10-hour shift. d. Selects TTPs based on the optimum time distance (the length of a line haul leg is selected on the basis of time distance, 4.5 hours). e. Provides minimum facilities for the dispatch point and field feeding, marshaling, and billeting areas to include a maintenance and service area. 3. Higher HQ establishes site for marshaling AO. a. Performs ground reconnaissance to ensure site is large enough to allow for adequate dispersion, cover, and concealment. b. Selects site with ample space for parking and marshaling of incoming or outgoing semitrailers and prime movers. c. Establishes area close to SP and accessible to main route. d. Establishes area close to motor pool, terminal, fuel, and loading area. e. Establishes internal road net and traffic pattern. f. Identifies site large enough to accommodate all vehicles in each march unit. g. Establishes a site where security can be maintained.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
551-721-3354	Supervise Truck Terminal/Trailer Transfer Point Operations	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 55-88M34-SM-TG
551-721-4321	Manage Truck Terminal/Trailer Transfer Point Operations	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 55-88M34-SM-TG
551-721-4327	Conduct Road Reconnaissance of Convoy Route	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 55-88M34-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Prepare for Battalion Transportation Support Activities (55-1-0016)
(FM 55-30, FM 63-3, FM 3-4, FM 3-5, FM 55-15, FM 63-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The S2/S3 section is responsible for providing input to the brigade and group support operations for developing the transportation support annex. The brigade and group commander's decision and concept of support operations are available. Transportation support requirements for corps operations have been determined. The battalion commander has provided planning guidance. Current transportation status reports of all organization elements are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The transportation plan conforms to the brigade and group commander's concept of operations and guidance from the brigade and group and battalion commanders. At MOPP 4, performance degradation factors increase operational completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 section develops transportation support plan. a. Coordinate transportation support priorities with the brigade and group S2/S3. b. Coordinate operating procedures and pre-positioning of assets in the corps area with the brigade and group S2/S3. c. Formulate a tentative transportation support requirement to support the corps forces. d. Identify locations for TT/TTPs. e. Identify support requirements to battalion elements. f. Identify communications control procedures. g. Coordinate transportation augmentation support, if required. h. Establish staff coordination for additional requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Identify locations of forward transportation distribution points. j. Develop night and reduced visibility transportation resupply plan. 2. S2/S3 section plans line-haul operations. a. Identify transportation requirements based on review of OPORD. b. Coordinate transportation priorities with brigade and group S2/S3. c. Conduct map and ground reconnaissance for route selection. d. Conduct ground reconnaissance to determine average travel time and desired speed. e. Identify locations of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites. f. Check the ability of vehicles to negotiate difficult grades, defiles, bridges, and terrain. g. Identify the number and type of units and teams required to provide throughput distribution of cargo. h. Identify convoy organization (if convoys are to be used). i. Identify the hauling method to move cargo. j. Identify locations of TTs and TTPs. k. Estimate average speed, time, and distance between segments of TTs and TTPs. l. Identify SP, RP, origin terminal, intermediate TTP, and destination terminals. m. Prepare overlay and strip maps that clearly depict route obstructions and key natural and man-made features. n. Identify support requirements to battalion elements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
o. Coordinate transportation augmentation support, if required. p. Coordinate highway usage restrictions with brigade and group S2/S3. q. Assign subordinate elements responsibilities for transportation missions. r. Establish staff coordination for additional requirements. s. Develop night and reduced visibility transportation plan. 3. S2/S3 section plans local haul operations. a. Identify transportation requirements based on review of OPORD. b. Coordinate transportation priorities with brigade and group S2/S3. c. Conduct map and ground reconnaissance for route selection. d. Conduct ground reconnaissance to determine average travel time and desired speed. e. Identify locations of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites. f. Check the ability of vehicles to negotiate difficult grades, defiles, bridges, and terrain. g. Identify the number and type of vehicles and truck units required to support the local haul mission. h. Identify convoy organization (if convoys are to be used). i. Identify the hauling method to move cargo. j. Estimate average speed, time, and distance from origin to destination. k. Estimate number of trips each vehicle must make daily to accomplish the mission. l. Identify SP, RP, origin, and destination.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
m. Prepare overlay and strip maps that clearly depict route obstructions and key natural and man-made features. n. Assign support requirements to battalion elements. o. Provide transportation augmentation support, if required. p. Coordinate highway usage restrictions with brigade and group S2/S3. q. Assign subordinate elements responsibilities for transportation missions. r. Establish staff coordination for additional requirements. s. Develop night and reduced visibility transportation plan. 4. Battalion S2/S3 provides input to brigade and group service support annex. a. Identify battalion transportation capabilities and limitations. b. Provide availability and status of transportation assets. c. Provide availability and status of previously allocated brigade and group transportation assets. d. Identify degradation of support at various threat levels. e. Recommend alternate courses of action if necessary. f. Brief annex input to the commander and staff.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
551-721-3359	Prepare a Strip Map	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 55-88M34-SM-TG
551-721-4327	Conduct Road Reconnaissance of Convoy Route	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 55-88M34-SM-TG
551-721-4335	Prepare Map Overlay	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 55-88M34-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Coordinate Transportation Support (55-1-0017) (FM 55-30, FM 100-10, FM 3-4, FM 3-5, FM 63-3, FM 63-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Transportation support operations have begun. The LOC is operational. Transportation requirements are being generated as a result of tactical operations. The transportation support annex from the brigade and group is available. The S2/S3 section conducts operations by radio, telephone, and messenger. Contingency plans for transportation augmentation support have been developed and approved by the battalion and brigade and group commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All transportation support requirements are coordinated with brigade and group S2/S3 and supported units. Transportation support is provided at the times specified in the brigade and group transportation support annex according to the battalion TSOP. At MOPP 4, performance degradation factors increase operational completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 section coordinates support request from the brigade and group S2/S3. a. Authenticate the accuracy of the request. b. Establish requester's exact location. c. Identify the transportation support requirements. d. Establish priority for requested transportation support. e. Provide transportation requirements to appropriate subordinate element. 2. S2/S3 section coordinates transportation support for executing mission requirements. a. Coordinate transportation plans within the battalion, brigade, and group for approval. b. Coordinate transportation plans with the brigade and group S2/S3. c. Request clearances and priorities for battalion transportation assets to use MSR.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Monitor transportation procedures to identify and eliminate bottlenecks. e. Monitor implementation of transportation support to direct and shift priorities as required. f. Coordinate recovery and evacuation of vehicles and unserviceable equipment assets. g. Coordinate maintenance repair times with support maintenance company. h. Provide additional transportation support as required according to the OPLAN, OPORD, and TSOP. 3. S2/S3 section monitors subordinate elements to determine readiness. a. Maintain current status of all unit readiness levels. b. Verify PMCS activities within the battalion for compliance with tactical SOP. c. Monitor levels of all classes of supply through the battalion S4 to determine operational capabilities. d. Monitor personnel strength and replacements through the battalion S1 to determine operational capabilities. e. Maintain a current list of battalion shortcomings. f. Monitor the effect of transportation support to identify flexible response that enhances transportation support efficiency. g. Provide daily readiness update to the brigade and group S2/S3. 4. S2/S3 section updates NBC contingency support plan. a. Coordinate NBC information updates with the brigade and group S2/S3. b. Plan alternate locations for battalion facilities. c. Plan increased requirements for transportation services.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Plan transportation equipment and supplies for elements relocating from a contaminated area. e. Plan reduced battalion operations. f. Coordinate transportation augmentation support through the brigade and group S2/S3. g. Request NBC monitoring and decontamination support from the brigade and group S4.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Supervise Truck Terminal/Trailer Transfer Point Operations (55-1-0021) (FM 55-30, AR 710-2, FM 3-4, FM 3-5, FM 55-15)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Transportation support operations have begun. The TT and TTP have been established. The battalion staff is conducting command and control functions over their specific areas of responsibility. Implementation of battalion plans, policies, and procedures are conducted by radio, teletypewriter, wire, and documents. The enemy can gather intelligence by electronic, visual, and audio means. The OPSEC plan and TSOP are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The TT and TTP are supervised according to the TSOP and OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 section directs TT and TTP operations. a. Supervise receiving, segregating, assembling, and dispatching loaded or empty semitrailers for movement. b. Supervise the maintenance of POL and dispensing facilities for operating equipment. c. Supervise the servicing, inspecting, and, if required, emergency repairs to incoming vehicles. d. Supervise the proper preparation and maintenance of operational records and reports. *2. OIC and NCOIC supervise TT operations. a. Check documentation of all incoming and outgoing semitrailers for proper preparation and maintenance. b. Supervise the dispatch and marshaling activities of the terminal. c. Supervise the inspection of incoming and outgoing semitrailers for maintenance, damage, condition of cargo, and completeness of equipment. d. Monitor the yard to ensure rapid movement of cargo to destination.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Check equipment operational status reports before final submission. f. Monitor the shuttle service to determine local movement of semitrailers using receipt procedures outlined in the TSOP. g. Supervise the marshaling of semitrailers for movement in advance. h. Coordinate for security of the terminal site, vehicles, and cargo located within the TT with the battalion S2/S3. i. Monitor closely all high-priority missions to ensure rapid pickup and timely delivery to consignee. j. Direct the operation of consolidated field feeding and maintenance services, the operating site, and/or temporary quarters for drivers. *3. OIC and NCOIC supervise TTP operations. a. Supervise trailer accountability procedures for compliance with the TSOP. b. Inspect the records of incoming trailer numbers and origin/destination recordings on the trailer receipt to ensure compliance with the TSOP. c. Inspect daily outgoing trailer reports for proper recordings of trailer numbers and destination. d. Inspect cargo and trailer documentation records for compliance with the TSOP. e. Supervise assignments of incoming drivers to outgoing trailers. f. Inspect the TCMD for proper driver authentication. g. Supervise the use of yard tractors to spot trailers after convoy departure. h. Supervise emergency maintenance and other support requirements available to line-haul vehicles and drivers as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*4. OIC and NCOIC supervise marshaling area operations. a. Supervise the movement of vehicles to assembly and marshaling area as soon as they are loaded. b. Position vehicles in convoy order as they arrive. c. Disperse vehicles maximizing the use of cover and concealment. d. Inspect vehicles for mechanical condition, load tie-downs, distribution, cleanliness, and markings as required. e. Refer vehicles to maintenance for repair of deficiencies as required. f. Supervise the replacement of inoperative or unrepairable vehicles with standby vehicles. g. Supervise refueling activities to ensure that all vehicles are filled to capacity. h. Inspect personnel and equipment for compliance with the TSOP. i. Check weapons and other equipment required for the assigned mission. j. Brief personnel on mission, mission requirements, convoy procedures, security measures, and safety. k. Provide personnel with strip maps or other route aids. l. Conduct communications for proper operation and employment of SOI and SSI procedures. *5. OIC and NCOIC supervise conduct of line-haul operations. a. Designate task vehicles in preparation for line-haul operations. b. Supervise loading of all vehicles for proper methods of load distribution and cargo security. c. Inspect personnel, equipment, and loads for compliance with the TSOP before leaving.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Monitor the departure schedule for compliance with instructions in the movement order. e. Supervise halts at scheduled TTP or TT for compliance with the TSOP. f. Supervise en route maintenance for compliance with the appropriate TM. g. Schedule refueling, resupply, and field feeding operations as required. h. Provide a plan for security during line-haul operations. i. Monitor unscheduled halts for validity and compliance with the TSOP. j. Supervise trailer exchange at TTP for compliance with the TSOP drop off old trailer; complete documentation. k. Supervise trailer pickup and retrograde movement procedures for compliance with the TSOP if applicable. l. Supervise return line-haul operations for compliance with the TSOP. m. Supervise individual truck movements to ensure all vehicles are operated safely and within designated speed limits. n. Supervise vehicle after-operations maintenance. *6. OIC and NCOIC supervise conduct of local haul operations. a. Supervise dispatch of vehicles to ensure all vehicles are at their scheduled load point on time. b. Supervise loading of all vehicles for proper methods of load distribution and cargo security. c. Supervise trailer exchange for compliance with the TSOP. d. Supervise individual truck movements to ensure all vehicles are operated safely and within designated speed limits. e. Supervise vehicle after-operations maintenance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*7. OIC and NCOIC supervise trailer utilization and control. a. Control movement of empty or loaded semitrailers with the trailer receipt. b. Inspect trailers for deficiencies. c. Annotate deficiencies in the remarks column of the trailer receipt. d. Maintain daily trailer accountability using the daily yard check. e. Maintain daily records on the locations of each empty or loaded trailer. f. Record deficiencies of each trailer on the daily outgoing trailer report. g. Control dispatched trailers using the daily outgoing trailer report. h. Record the load class and destination of each trailer on the daily outgoing trailer report. i. Record the time the trailer departed and the name of the convoy commander on the daily outgoing trailer report. j. Maintain a daily status board reflecting trailer availability. k. Report the daily status to the battalion S2/S3 according to the TSOP. *8. OIC and NCOIC supervise trailer relay station. a. Maintain accountability of all assigned trailers. b. Perform daily or more frequent inspections of the entire AO. c. Locate lost or delayed trailers and reroute trailers to requested destination. d. Verify trailer locations and numbers from reports received. e. Inspect semitrailers to determine those requiring maintenance and/or repairs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Refer semitrailers with deficiencies to the battalion maintenance section for repair. g. Report trailer status changes to the battalion S2/S3 as they occur.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
551-721-3354	Supervise Truck Terminal/Trailer Transfer Point Operations	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 55-88M34-SM-TG
551-721-4321	Manage Truck Terminal/Trailer Transfer Point Operations	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 55-88M34-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S2/S3 Section

TASK: Conduct Mission Analysis (63-1-4001) (FM 101-5, AR 530-1, FM 100-14, FM 101-5-1, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The mission of the battalion is to provide support to the operation. The Support Operations Officer attends higher HQ or the supported unit's staff meeting. The higher HQ commander's planning guidance and restated mission have been secured. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog devices. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Upon receipt of the new mission, the commander briefs the XO. The XO assembles principal staff members in preparation for mission analysis. Current personnel, supplies, and equipment status reports for all subordinate elements are available. Once higher HQ COA and tentative support requirements have been received, the Support Operations Section coordinates with the higher HQ staff elements concerning additional support requirements and with the S2/S3 Section concerning tentative task organization of the battalion. Mission analysis is dynamic and continuous; therefore, it is subject to change at anytime based upon new information, changing situations, and change of commander's guidance. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Mission analysis results in the development of a plan that supports the higher HQ commander's intent and concept of operations. Mission analysis is completed within the time established by the XO. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase mission analysis completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. XO supervises staff mission analysis using analog and/or digital devices. a. Organizes staff to conduct mission analysis. b. Translates major specified and implied tasks to specific objectives based on intent of next two higher command echelons. c. Provides mission analysis guidance to staff based on the commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Inspects results of staff mission analysis for compliance with commander's guidance. e. Identifies time and place for staff's mission analysis briefing to commander. *2. S2/S3 Officer coordinates support planning with supported elements. a. Provides current support capabilities and limitations of the battalion. b. Provides estimated degradation of support for various threat and MOPP levels. c. Provides resolutions for all previously identified support shortfalls. d. Identifies specific force structure to be supported, to include tentative augmentations. e. Identifies projected location of the proposed support sites. f. Identifies estimated times for deployment of battalion and other units. *3. Staff Officers conduct preliminary staff mission analysis. a. Provide information update(s) to commander on areas that are critical to mission accomplishment. b. Identify mission and intent of commanders of the next two higher HQ. c. Exchange pertinent information that is relevant to new mission with other staff sections. d. Identify tentative force structure and size to be supported. e. Record specified tasks in higher HQ and supported unit's OPLANs. f. Identify all implied tasks that must be accomplished to perform the overall mission or specified tasks.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*4. S2/S3 Officer provides input for development of higher HQ OPLAN. a. Provides information briefing to higher HQ staff element, which includes projected locations of supported elements, projected requirements, logistics and combat health support distribution plan and special operations. b. Provides current status of assets and task organization to higher HQ. *5. Staff Officers finalize staff mission analysis. a. Select essential tasks that are necessary to accomplish overall mission based on higher HQ commander's intent. b. List all constraints and restrictions on actions and activities. c. List all information relating to the NBC threats on the battlefield. d. Prepare preliminary mission statement (S2/S3). e. Brief staff mission analysis results to commander. *6. Commander completes mission analysis. a. Restates mission in clear, concise statements of tasks in the order they are to be accomplished. b. Provides acceptable levels of risk for mission accomplishment. c. Provides guidance on the parameters for conducting analysis in specific areas. d. States specific COA to be or not to be pursued by the staff. e. Directs S2/S3 to issue warning notice to all subordinate units informing them of pending operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*7. XO and S2/S3 perform a time analysis. a. Calculate total time remaining before execution of upcoming operations. b. Identify all steps in the command estimate process. c. Assign time limitations for each step in the command estimate process that does not exceed one-third of the total time remaining before execution. d. Disseminate time limitations to all staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (63-1-4002) (FM 34-130, AR 530-1, FM 101-5, FM 3-4, FM 34-1)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander approves the staff's mission analysis and issues his restated mission and planning guidance. The S2/S3 issues a warning notice to subordinate units and initiates the IPB process. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Higher HQ battlefield area evaluations are available and portions are transcribed to the battalion's analysis of the AO. Other information, such as engineer's terrain studies, operational weather forecast, the provost marshal's analysis of route reconnaissance, and civil military conditions are available. The S2/S3 has been assigned the responsibility of initiating, coordinating, ensuring completion, and disseminating the analysis of the AO. The S2/S3 Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog, digital, automation, and courier communications systems. SCPE is on hand or field expedient and natural shelters are available, whichever applies. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Facts and assumptions are identified about the battlefield environment and the threat that provide focus for the intelligence collection effort, enable staff planning, and development of friendly COA. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase IPB completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 Section determines information requirements using analog and/or digital devices. a. Identifies the amount of detail required within time available. b. Identifies gaps in current intelligence using CCIR and commander's intent to set priorities. c. Identifies initial collection requirements. d. Assembles materials and information required to conduct IPB. e. Forwards pertinent information to other staff sections.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/S3 Section defines the battlefield environment. a. Identifies the limits of the AO. b. Identifies the limits of the area of interest. c. Coordinates input on the battlefield environment with other staff sections. d. Identifies significant characteristics of the battlefield environment that affect the specific area of responsibility in coordination with each staff section. e. Identifies those characteristics of the battlefield that require in-depth evaluation. 3. S2/S3 Section evaluates the battlefield's effects upon COA. a. Identifies effects of terrain on the battalion's operations. b. Identifies the effects of weather upon battalion's operations. c. Identifies effects of logistics infrastructure, demographics, economics, and political characteristics upon battalion's operations. d. Lists the combined effects of the battlefield environment on friendly COA. e. Identifies the effects of terrain on threat COA. f. Identifies the effects of weather on threat COA. g. Identifies effects of logistics infrastructure, demographics, economics, and political characteristics on threat COA. h. Lists the combined effects of the battlefield environment on threat COA. i. Develops population status overlay, weather analysis matrix, and other overlays, as required, using digital and analog means of intelligence gathering.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
4. S2/S3 Section evaluates the threat. a. Conducts a threat order of battle analysis for each type of conventional or unconventional units that might be faced. b. Develops a threat COA model. 5. S2/S3 Section determines threat COA. a. Identifies all rational COA available to the threat. b. Prioritizes each available COA. c. Develops a comprehensive, detailed set of threat COA. d. Prepares situation templates for each COA available to the threat. e. Prepares event template. f. Prepares decision support template for rear CP. 6. S2/S3 Section prepares analysis of the AO. a. Consolidates the IPB data into appropriate format. b. Forwards draft Analysis of the AO to S2/S3 for review and approval. c. Makes appropriate changes as instructed by the S2/S3 and XO. d. Forwards corrected analysis of the AO to the S2/S3 for signature. e. Distributes analysis of AO, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Formulate Feasible Courses of Action (63-1-4003) (FM 101-5, AR 530-1, FM 100-14, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 34-130)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion's analysis of the AO is completed. Higher HQ analysis of the AO are available. Higher HQ COAs are available. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded. Unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Staff Sections gather all pertinent information needed for their estimates. During this process, the S2/S3 Section finalizes the IPB. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Feasible COA statements and sketches support the commander's restated mission and formulate parameters for staff estimates. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase feasible COA completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 Section performs rear area threat evaluation using analog and/or digital devices. a. Coordinates with supporting rear operations elements for all current threat information affecting the new AO. b. Identifies threat forces expected to be found in the area of interest. c. Lists all known threat force dispositions, composition, and strength. d. Lists all recent threat activities in the area of interest and influence. e. Develops applicable doctrinal templates for threat forces within the area of interest. f. Prepares an unconventional warfare situation map that shows probable operating areas, encampments, and movement routes for unconventional threat forces.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Prepares a population status overlay that shows areas with a high potential for civil unrest and/or concentrations of enemy sympathizers. h. Requests intelligence information required to fill gaps identified in the data base from the higher HQ staff element. 2. S2/S3 Section performs threat integration. a. Prepares a situation template showing unit and equipment dispositions, frontages, depths, and echelon spacing adjusted for terrain and weather factors. b. Prepares an event template showing NAI along high-speed avenues of approach into the support area. c. Prepares a decision support template showing points where a decision is required based on threat action and rate of movement. d. Lists threat's most likely COA in their probable order of adoption. e. Coordinates threat integration products with higher HQ staff element. 3. S2/S3 Section arrays friendly force, battalion HQ, and its subordinate units. a. Identifies maneuver forces and their availability in the area of interest. b. Identifies all supporting CSS units in the area of interest. c. Prepares analog/digital map overlay showing array of friendly units based on mission requirements and guidance from the commander. *4. S2/S3 selects feasible COA. a. Identifies specific guidance from the higher HQ OPLAN. b. Lists schemes of support that sustains supported units in area of responsibility. c. Identifies tentative arrangements for command, control, and communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Assigns tentative missions consistent with a specific subordinate element's capability. e. Lists a minimum of two feasible COA. f. Briefs commander and XO on the selected COA for approval or revision. g. Disseminates approved feasible COA to all other staff sections using appropriate Battlefield Functional Area Command and Control system.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Develop Intelligence Estimate (63-1-4004) (FM 34-130, FM 101-5, FM 3-4, FM 34-54)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The S2/S3 has disseminated the approved feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitation for estimates. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The battalion and higher HQ analyses of the AO are available and are used for transcribing information to the intelligence estimate. The S2/S3 Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications, and courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Intelligence estimate is prepared within the time prescribed in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP and/or Army Regulation (oral/written). At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase intelligence estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 Section determines specific information requirements using analog and/or digital devices. a. Identifies information requirements by analyzing the commander's restated mission and the analysis of the AO. b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements for obtaining information from the TSOP. c. Identifies PIR/IR gaps. d. Prepares listing of indicators for each PIR/IR. NOTE: List addresses applicable PIR/IR received from higher HQ, threat infiltration activities, possible targets for threat activities, and probable type and size force the threat may use against these targets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Prepares intelligence collection work sheet that lists all PIR/IR, NAI, indicators, and available collection agencies. f. Requests additional intelligence, based on PIR/IR and current holdings, from collection agencies listed in collection work sheet. 2. S2/S3 Section assembles required intelligence information. a. Extracts required information from current intelligence holdings, such as the S2 workbook, ASAS, situation maps, policy files and journals, and INTSUM. b. Revises intelligence collection work sheets to reflect changes in collection requirements. c. Identifies pertinence of all incoming information in terms of reliability and credibility factors. d. Integrates incoming information into existing files and work sheets. 3. S2/S3 Section develops reference and paragraph 1, Mission. a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate. b. Transcribes commander's restated mission. 4. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 2, Situation and Considerations. a. Lists weather report, climatic information, and light data with moon phase. b. Lists the weather effects on visibility, traffic ability, personnel, equipment, threat capabilities, and friendly COA. c. Lists the terrain effects on the ability of a force to obtain long and short range observation and direct fire. d. Lists the terrain effects on the terminal impact of direct weapons. e. Lists the terrain effects on concealment from ground and air observations, and cover from direct and indirect fire.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Lists threat avenues of approach. g. Identifies probable size and type threat force that could traverse the avenues of approach. h. Identifies terrain factors effecting placement of the battalion and subordinate units. i. Summarizes overall effects of terrain on threat capabilities and COA. j. Summarizes overall effects of terrain on battalion's mission and COA. 5. S2/S3 Section develops Enemy Forces portion of paragraph 2. a. Lists all map overlays and previously published documents that show threat situation and positions. b. Lists all threat units by unit designation with organizational structure. c. Summarizes current threat activities that might serve as indicators to future actions. d. Lists threat deviations from known doctrine, practices, and principles of war and known personnel and equipment weaknesses. e. Lists civilian populace attitudes toward friendly and threat forces as they relate to hindrance or accomplishment of the battalion's mission. 6. S2/S3 Section develops Friendly Forces portion of paragraph 2. a. Lists the basic maneuver capabilities to include what, when, where, and in what strength, for each capability. b. Lists conclusions on threat capabilities and probability of adoption of a COA, including rationale. c. Lists limitations that could make the accomplishment of the battalion's mission highly doubtful or impossible. d. List indicators for possible use of air and NBC weapons and DE devices.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
7. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 3, Analysis. a. Analyzes each COA using key considerations. b. Determines advantages and disadvantages of each COA. *8. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 4, Comparison. a. Compares COAs using key considerations. b. Ranks COAs for each key consideration. c. Uses a decision matrix to compare COAs. 9. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 5, Recommendations and Conclusions. a. Recommends COA based on the comparison. b. Issues deficiencies and risks with recommendation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S1 Section

TASK: Develop Personnel Estimate (63-1-4005) (FM 12-6, FM 100-10, FM 101-5)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion and higher HQ analyses of the AO are available. Tactical and intelligence information is transcribed from the battalion intelligence estimate. The S2/S3 has disseminated the approved feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitation for estimates. S1 section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications and by courier. The personnel estimate is distributed to the battalion staff only. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel estimate is prepared within the time specified in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP and/or Regulations. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase personnel estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S1 Section determines information requirements using analog and/or digital devices. a. Identifies information requirements by analyzing the commander's restated mission, analyses of the AO, and higher HQ personnel summaries. b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP. c. Identifies agencies where required information can be obtained.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S1 Section assembles required information. a. Coordinates tactical and intelligence information requirements with the S2/S3 Section. b. Coordinates logistics information requirements with S4 Section. c. Extracts required information from current information holdings, such as S1 workbook, situation maps, policy files, and journals. d. Requests additional information requirements from higher HQ staff element. 3. S1 Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission. a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate. b. Transcribes the commander's restated mission. 4. S1 Section drafts paragraph 2, Situation and Considerations. a. Prepares brief summary that references the appropriate intelligence document. b. States the effects of the intelligence situation on personnel activities. c. Lists disposition of all tactical units that influence personnel activities. d. Lists all COA provided by the S2/S3. e. Lists disposition of logistics units and installations that have an effect on the personnel situation. f. Lists projected logistics developments that influence personnel operations. g. Lists disposition of civil affairs units and installations that have an effect on the personnel situation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Lists projected CMO developments likely to influence personnel operations. i. Prepares troop preparedness situation subparagraph. NOTE: Subparagraph includes: unit strength, maintenance, replacements, noncombat matters, soldier personnel readiness, service support, organizational climate, commitment, and cohesion factors. j. Lists all assumptions based on initial planning guidance. k. Prepares casualty estimate for each COA. 5. S1 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis. a. Lists all COA provided by the S2/S3. b. Lists problem areas, trends, and deficiencies impacting on troop preparedness of each COA. 6. S1 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison. a. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the accomplishment of the personnel mission. b. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA, to include methods of overcoming deficiencies or modifications required in each COA. 7. S1 Section drafts paragraph 5, Recommendations and Conclusions. a. States supportability of mission from a personnel viewpoint. b. Selects COA that can be supported from the personnel standpoint. c. Lists major personnel deficiencies that require the commander's attention. d. Recommends specific methods for eliminating or reducing the effects of these major deficiencies.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*8. S1 approves personnel estimate. a. Verifies content for completeness, correctness, and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Presents estimate to commander or XO and staff (oral or written). 9. S1 Section distributes the personnel estimate. a. Incorporates comments, if required. b. Forwards personnel estimate to S1 for signature. c. Forwards personnel estimate to other staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S4 Section

TASK: Develop Logistics Estimate (63-1-4006) (FM 100-10, FM 101-5, FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The battalion and higher HQ analyses of the AO are available. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Tactical and intelligence information is transcribed from the intelligence estimate. The S2/S3 has disseminated the approved feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitations for estimates. The logistics estimate addresses internal battalion logistics only. S4 section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications and by courier. The logistics estimate is distributed to battalion staff only. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Logistics estimate is prepared within the time specified in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP and/or Regulations (oral/written). At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase logistics estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S4 Section determines information requirements using analog and/or digital devices. a. Identifies information requirements by analyzing the commander's restated mission, analysis of the AO, and higher HQ logistics summaries. b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP. c. Identifies agencies and documents where required information can be obtained.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S4 Section assembles required information. a. Coordinates tactical and intelligence information requirements with S2/S3 Section. b. Coordinates personnel information requirements with S1 Section. c. Extracts required information from current information holdings, such as S4 workbook, CSSCS, situation maps, policy files, and journals. d. Requests additional information requirement support from higher HQ staff element. 3. S4 Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission. a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate. b. Transcribes the commander's restated mission. 4. S4 Section drafts paragraph 2, The Situation and Considerations. a. Prepares brief intelligence summary with appropriate references. b. States the effects of the intelligence situation on internal logistics activities. c. Lists disposition of all tactical units that influence internal logistics activities. d. Lists all COA provided by the S2/S3 Section. e. Lists disposition of personnel and administration units and installations that have an effect on the internal logistics situation. f. Lists projected developments within the personnel field likely to influence internal logistics operations. g. Lists disposition of CMO units that have an effect on internal logistics situation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Lists developments within the CMO field likely to influence internal logistics operations. i. Prepares a general statement about present equipment on hand, supply status and maintenance posture. NOTE: Statement includes; repair times, posture of maintenance elements, impact of Class VII and IX on maintenance capability, and the status of Class VII items. j. Lists overall status of all classes of supply (obtained from CSSCS) and transportation assets. k. Lists all assumptions based on the initial planning guidance. 5. S4 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action. a. Calculates the sufficiency of proposed area for internal logistics operations. b. Lists all COA provided by S2/S3 Section. c. Lists logistics and tactical impact for each COA. 6. S4 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action. a. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the accomplishment of the internal logistics mission. b. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA. NOTE: Analysis includes methods and modifications for overcoming deficiencies in each COA. 7. S4 Section drafts paragraph 5, Conclusions. a. States mission supportability from an internal logistics viewpoint. b. Selects best COA that can be supported from an internal logistics standpoint.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*8. S4 approves logistics estimate. a. Verifies content for completeness, correctness, and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Presents estimate to commander or XO and staff (oral or written). 9. S4 Section distributes the logistics estimate. a. Incorporates comments, if required. b. Forwards logistics estimate to S4 for signature. c. Forwards logistics estimate to other battalion staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Develop Support Operations Estimate (63-1-4007) (FM 101-5, FM 100-10, FM 100-16, FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The battalion and higher HQ analyses of the AO are available. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Tactical and intelligence information is transcribed from the intelligence estimate. The S2/S3 has provided the approved feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limit for the completion of the estimate. This estimate addresses external support only. Support Operations Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications, appropriate BFACS and courier. The support operations estimate is distributed to battalion staff only. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Support operations estimate is prepared within the time specified in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP (oral/written). At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase support operations estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 section NCOIC determines information requirements using analog and/or digital devices and logistics STAMIS. a. Identifies information requirements by analyzing the commander's restated mission, analyses of the AO, and higher HQ OPLAN. b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP. c. Identifies agencies and/or documents where required information can be obtained.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/S3 Section assembles required information. a. Coordinates tactical and intelligence information requirements. b. Coordinates personnel information requirements with S1 Section. c. Extracts required information from current information holdings, such as Support Operations workbook, situation maps, policy files, and journals. d. Identifies tentative supported units. e. Requests additional information requirements from higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications. 3. S2/S3 Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission. a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate. b. Lists the commander's restated mission. 4. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 2, The Situation and Considerations. a. Prepares brief intelligence summary with appropriate references. b. Lists the effects of the characteristics of the AO on support operations and mission accomplishment. c. States the affects of the intelligence situation on support activities. d. Lists disposition of all tactical units that influence support activities. e. Lists all provided COA. f. Lists disposition of all personnel and administration units and installations that have an effect on the support situation. g. Lists projected developments within the personnel and internal logistics field that could influence support operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Lists disposition of CMO operations that have an effect on the support situation. i. Lists developments within the CMO field that could influence support operations. j. Provides overall status of logistics and CHS capabilities, distribution systems and any shortfalls that may impact on support operations. k. Provides current situation, status, and restrictions on the use of foreign nation resources. l. Lists all assumptions based on the initial planning guidance. 5. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action. a. Calculates sufficiency of proposed area for support operations. b. Calculates total requirements to support proposed responsibility using CSSCS. c. Lists required organizational structure for each approved COA. d. Lists support deficiencies for each COA. 6. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action. a. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the accomplishment of the support mission. b. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA, to include methods of overcoming deficiencies or modifications required in each COA. 7. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 5, Conclusions. a. States supportability of mission from an external support viewpoint. b. Selects best COA that can be supported from an external support viewpoint.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*8. S2/S3 Officer approves estimate. a. Verifies content for completeness, correctness, and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Presents estimate to commander or XO and staff (oral or written). 9. S2/S3 Section distributes the estimate. a. Incorporates comments, if required. b. Forwards estimate to Support Operations Officer for signature. c. Forwards estimate to other battalion staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Develop Supporting Commander's (Operations) Estimate (63-1-4008) (FM 101-5, FM 100-10, FM 101-5-1, FM 3-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: All primary staff estimates are completed. Each staff section has provided its recommended COA. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The higher HQ and battalion's analyses of the AO and NBC Vulnerability Analysis are available. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitations for estimates. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications and by courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Supporting commander's (operation) estimate is prepared within the time prescribed in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in Regulations or TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase the supporting commander's (operation) estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 Section conducts an NBC Vulnerability Analysis. a. Identifies potential battalion AO. b. Identifies all pertinent information required to perform the analysis. c. Identifies potential threat nuclear, chemical or biological weapons delivery systems. NOTE: Delivery system information should include probable yield(s) and type agents associated with the threat and the range and location of delivery systems, if known. d. Identifies location, size, shape, and posture of all subordinate units being analyzed. e. Selects appropriate vulnerability radii.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Selects best nuclear vulnerability technique. g. Identifies "worst case" ground zero. h. Estimates fractional coverage. i. Compares estimated percentage of casualties or damage to commander's acceptable loss criteria. j. Recommends COA to decrease unit's vulnerability or increase protection. k. Forwards NBC Vulnerability Analysis to S2/S3 for approval or modification. 2. S6 section prepares analog and digital communications estimate. NOTE: The S2/3 Section will perform this task step if the unit is without an S6 Section. a. Lists the COA provided by the S2/S3. b. Conducts a map reconnaissance to identify communications/automation limitations. c. Identifies current status of all battalion communications/automation equipment. d. Lists terrain factors that may affect communication/automation compatibility or vulnerability. e. Lists communications/automation factors that may be affected by the AO, enemy disposition and strength, enemy capabilities, or other information technology activities. f. Coordinates with S4 Section for the status of incoming communications/automation equipment. g. Coordinates with the supporting communications/automation element to identify the status of all nonoperational equipment. h. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA. i. Lists methods to eliminate or overcome all deficiencies.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
j. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA. k. Selects best COA to accomplish mission from a communications viewpoint. l. Forwards communications estimate to S2/S3 for approval or modification. 3. S2/S3 Section determines information requirements. a. Identifies information requirements by reviewing the battalion and higher HQ commanders' restated missions and OPLAN. b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP. c. Identifies agencies and/or documents where additional information requirements may be obtained. d. Identifies special requirements by reviewing other staff estimates. 4. S2/S3 sections draft references and paragraph 1, Mission. a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate. b. Lists the commander's restated mission. 5. S2/S3 section draft paragraph 2, The Situation and Course of Action. a. Lists the nature of the operations to be supported. b. Lists the composition and locations of supported units. c. Lists peculiar or unusual support requirements and other factors pertaining to the supported force that affect the scope and size of the support mission. d. Lists the effects of the AO on the support mission. e. Lists all enemy capabilities that are a threat to the support mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Lists aspects of the friendly situation that provide the basis for anticipated difficulties in the battalion's capability to provide required support. g. Lists phases of the operations that require a reassessment of support. h. Lists special support requirements and the phase of the operations in which they occur. i. Lists special support techniques or procedures required because of tactical operations. j. Lists the effects of logistic, personnel, and CMO situations within the battalion on mission accomplishment. k. Lists all projected difficulties that may influence the accomplishment of the mission. l. Lists all approved feasible COA. 6. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action. a. Identifies the probable effect of each significant difficulty on the success of each COA. b. Prepares a COA matrix showing the advantages and disadvantages of each COA. c. Assigns probability of success to each COA. 7. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action. a. Conducts comparative analysis of the COA. b. Selects best COA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
8. S2/S3 Section staffs supporting commander's (operation) estimate for review and comments using analog or digital devices. a. Forwards estimate to other battalion staff sections for review and/or comments. b. Forwards reviewed estimate to S2/S3 for approval or modification. c. Resolves differences in conclusions concerning recommended COA prior to briefing the commander. 9. Command Section conducts commander's decision briefing. a. Organizes staff for commander's decision briefing. b. Briefs commander on all aspects of the supporting commander's (operation) estimate. *10. Commander provides decision and concept of operations. a. Modifies staff recommendations, if required. b. Provides guidance for a new COA, if required. c. Approves staff recommendations. d. Translates the selected COA into a statement which describes the, who, what, when, where, how, and why. e. Directs S2/S3 to issue warning order to subordinate units using appropriate analog and digital communications. NOTE: Warning order includes the following minimum information: mission, time of execution, earliest time of movement, time and location of OPLAN issue, and time check.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order and Annexes (63-1-4009) (FM 101-5, AR 530-1, FM 101-5-1, FM 21-31)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The supporting commander's (operation) estimate is approved. The commander has provided his decision and concept of operations. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available.The XO assigns preparation responsibilities for OPLAN/OPORD and annexes. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of OPLAN/OPORD and annexes. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital means of communications and by courier. OPLAN becomes OPORD upon implementation. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: OPLAN/OPORD and annexes are prepared IAW regulations within the time prescribed by the commander or XO. OPLAN/OPORD supports and articulates the commander's intent. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase OPLAN/OPORD and annexes completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 Section drafts Reference, Time Zone Used, and Task Organization sections. a. Lists maps, charts, sketches, or other documents used in preparation and required for complete understanding of OPLAN. b. Transcribes time zone consistent with higher HQ OPLAN. c. Lists battalion task organization, time, and effective date.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/S3 Section draft paragraph 1, Situation. a. Lists composition, disposition, location, estimated strength, identification, and capabilities of enemy forces that can influence the battalion's logistics mission. b. Lists in order by higher, adjacent, supporting, and reinforcing friendly forces that influence support operations. NOTE: List consists of units not previously named in the Task Organization. c. Lists units attached to or detached from the battalion, with their attachment or detachment effective time, if applicable. d. Lists commander's assumptions that may exist at the time the OPLAN becomes an OPORD. 3. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 2, Mission. a. States tasks to be accomplished that address the who, what, when, where and time length of operation. b. States the mission based on the commander's guidance and intent. 4. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Execution. a. States the commander's intention in sufficient detail to ensure appropriate actions by subordinate units. b. States the commander's concept of operations for the execution of support mission from start to finish. c. Lists the scheme of support that includes placement, movement, and primary mission of each subordinate unit. d. Lists all details of coordination and control applicable to two or more units of the battalion including troop safety measures, MOPP levels, and restriction on use of chemical weapons.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
5. S2/S3, S1, and S4 Sections draft paragraph 4, Service Support. a. Update battle rosters and personnel status charts to reflect new task organization. b. Develop estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates. c. Prepare "personnel" portion of paragraph 4, Service Support. d. Provide support instructions, logistics and CHS distribution schemes and other arrangements that support the operations and are of primary interests to subordinate units. e. Reference higher HQ service support paragraph, when it is lengthy and the details are included in higher HQ service support paragraph. 6. S2/S3 and S6 Sections draft paragraph 5, Command and Signal. a. Lists location of the CP, alternate CP, and liaison requirements different than those stated in TSOP. b. Lists all information technologies including index of the effective SOI/SSI and instructions for the use of local area networks, automation, radio, pyrotechnics, or restriction on the employment of analog or digital communications. c. Provides acknowledgement instructions, commander's signature block, authentication section, and distribution instructions. 7. S2/S3 Section task organizes subordinate units/elements for the support mission. a. Identifies total support requirements by reviewing the commander's planning guidance and the restated mission. b. Identifies unit availability by inspecting Higher HQ OPLAN. c. Identifies where to reduce or add units or elements by reviewing supported forces scheme of maneuver and terrain factors. d. Organizes subordinate units based on their capability to accommodate the support mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
8. S2/S3 Section drafts the task organization annex. a. Lists each assigned or attached unit and their tentative location and appropriate time of attachment. b. Forwards annex to the S2/S3 for approval or modification. c. Distributes annex to all appropriate staff sections and organic and attached units using appropriate BFACS. d. Attaches task organization annex to the OPLAN/OPORD. 9. S2/S3 Section drafts an operations overlay. a. States map reference data, effective date, and purpose of the overlay. b. Lists classification markings and downgrading instructions, if applicable. c. Applies overlay plotting techniques. d. Plots boundaries, supporting, supported, and subordinate units' locations within 50 meters. e. Affixes graphic portrayal of axis of advance, supply routes, and unit locations. f. Forwards operations overlay to the S2/S3 for approval or modification using MCS. g. Attaches overlay to the OPLAN/OPORD as an annex. 10. S2/S3 Section consolidates staff input. a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Prepares revised copy of OPLAN/OPORD. c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
11. S2/S3 Section distributes the OPLAN/OPORD using analog or digital devices. a. Prepares appropriate number copies of OPLAN/OPORD. b. Distributes OPLAN/OPORD to all appropriate staff sections, organic, and attached units using MCS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Develop Road Movement Order (63-1-4010) (FM 55-1, FM 100-10, FM 101-5, FM 3-3, FM 55-10, FM 55-30)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The supporting commander's (operation) estimate with specific COA has been approved. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for the movement order in coordination with the Support Operations and S4 Sections. The battalion has responsibility for movement of all its subordinate units. Future locations of subordinate units have been identified and coordinated with higher HQ staff element. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Movement order is prepared IAW regulations and/or TSOP within the time established in the preparation guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase road movement order completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 Section determines additional requirements for movement of subordinate elements using analog and/or digital devices. a. Identifies adjacent unit boundaries and all other areas of responsibility to be crossed by the battalion's subordinate units. b. Identifies the probable security requirement by reviewing intelligence estimates and summaries. c. Identifies the current mobility status of each subordinate element. 2. S2/S3 Section selects tentative march route(s). a. Identifies all possible routes by conducting map reconnaissance. b. Identifies possible tactical implications for all possible routes in close coordination with the supporting rear operations element.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Identifies possible problem areas and road traffic ability from engineer road classification overlays and intelligence summaries. d. Conducts comparative analysis of all possible routes. e. Selects best possible route(s). f. Coordinates route selection with higher HQ and other battalion staff sections using analog and/or digital communications. g. Forwards route(s) selection to S2/S3 for approval or modification. 3. S2/S3 Section directs route reconnaissance activities. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS or appropriate analog or digital communications. b. Requests MP route reconnaissance overlay. c. Tasks subordinate units to conduct reconnaissance of tentative march routes using analog and/or digital communications or MTS. d. Briefs HQ company reconnaissance leader. e. Monitors movement and activities of all reconnaissance parties to ensure compliance with instructions and TSOP using analog and/or digital communications or MTS. f. Debriefs HQ company reconnaissance leader upon completion of mission. 4. S2/S3 Section selects specific march route(s). a. Consolidates all route reconnaissance party(s) data. b. Conducts comparative analysis of all data for each tentative route. c. Selects primary and secondary route(s) for each subordinate element. d. Coordinates battalion HQ route with HQ company commander.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Prepares analog/digital overlays using subordinate unit reconnaissance data. f. Provides reconnaissance and route selection update to the commander. g. Forwards all reconnaissance data to higher HQ, adjacent, and subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications or MTS. 5. S4 Section coordinates internal support requirements for move. a. Coordinates supply support with subordinate and attached units. b. Coordinates maintenance support with subordinate and attached units. c. Coordinates transportation support with subordinate and attached units. d. Coordinates food service support with subordinate and attached units. 6. S2/S3 Section coordinates external movement support requirements using analog or digital communications. a. Coordinates additional external transportation requirements with the responsible movement control agency. b. Coordinates route clearances with responsible movement control agency or supporting rear operations element. c. Coordinates medical treatment and evacuation requirements and procedures with supporting medical element. d. Coordinates security escort, fire support, and CAS requirements with supporting rear operations element. e. Coordinates MP traffic control support with supporting MP element and rear operations element. f. Coordinates decontamination requirements with higher HQ chemical officer.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Coordinates smoke requirements with higher HQ chemical officer. h. Coordinates external movement support using analog and/or digital communications or MTS. 7. S2/S3 Section develops overall movement schemes for HQ company. a. Coordinates with HQ company commander for the task organization and order of march for HQ company. b. Debriefs HQ company reconnaissance personnel. c. Prepares road movement table(s), graphs, and overlays for HQ company. d. Coordinates advance/quartering party composition and departure time with the HQ company commander. 8. S2/S3 section develops plan. a. Calculates projected support requirements until new operational sites are established by evaluating current supported units' assets. b. Coordinates anticipated requirements with supported units in current AO. c. Provides recommendations for order of movement for companies/detachments and specific shuttling of high priority support assets. d. Establishes notification procedures to alert customers of what facilities will be available during movement. 9. S2/S3 Section develops overall movement scheme for move. a. Identifies the task organization for movement with critical supplies and equipment dispersed throughout all elements. b. Assigns order of march for move by placing elements of critical support items in the first serial.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Prepares road movement table(s), graphs, and overlays. NOTE: Under MOPP4 conditions, road movement tables should be increased a minimum of 3 times the normal movement time. d. Coordinates advance/quartering party composition and departure time with all subordinate units' commanders using analog and/or digital communications or MTS. 10. S2/S3 Section drafts Reference, Time Zone Used, and Task Organization Sections. a. Lists all maps and overlays, charts, or other documents required to understand the order. b. Transcribes time zone used throughout from higher HQ OPLAN. c. Identifies task organization of battalion as directed by S2/S3. 11. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 1, Situation. a. Provides weather forecast for duration of move and its effect on route(s). b. Provides terrain analysis and its effects on the move. c. Lists enemy disposition, strength, and capability factors affecting battalion movement. d. Lists all friendly units that provide support to the battalion during the move. e. Lists attachments and detachments initiated for movement purposes only. 12. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 2, Mission. a. States those tasks to be accomplished, addressing who, what, when, why, and where. b. Provides overall movement mission statement that includes the purpose of movement and the start times.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
13. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Execution. a. Provides brief statement on the concept of the move. b. Lists all subordinate elements' taskings required to complete battalion move. c. Lists all coordinating instructions applicable to two or more companies and the battalion HQ. 14. S2/S3 and S4 Sections draft paragraph 4, Service Support. a. Lists all units and the service support they provide to at least two subordinate units and the battalion HQ. b. Lists all traffic control support that affects at least two subordinate units and battalion HQ. c. Lists the HQ company's service support functions. 15. S2/S3 and S6 Sections draft paragraph 5, Command and Signal and the Authentication Section. a. Lists position of command group in the HQ company move and the location of battalion HQ during the battalion move. b. Lists CP closing and opening times and new location. c. Lists all analog and digital communications information. NOTE: List includes effective SOI/SSI, instructions on the use of analog and/or digital communications, and pyrotechnics, and any restrictions or special communications procedures. d. Lists acknowledgement instructions appropriate signature block, and distribution instructions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
16. S2/S3 Section distributes movement order. a. Coordinates movement order review with other battalion staff sections. b. Forwards draft movement order to the S2/S3 for approval or modifications. c. Distributes approved movement order to appropriate staff sections, subordinate, and attached units using analog and/or digital communications or hard copy format.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
071-326-0515	Select a Movement Route Using a Map	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Develop Occupation Plan (63-1-4011) (FM 101-5, FM 101-5-1, FM 10-27-2, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 5-103)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The XO has assigned responsibility for planning the occupation of new AO to the staff. The S2/3 has primary responsibility in coordination with other battalion staff sections. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion TSOP has been updated to accommodate changing procedural requirements. Subordinate units' missions have been identified. Tentative subordinate units and battalion HQ locations have been designated. Current analog/digital situation maps are available. Higher HQ staff element has provided reconnaissance information furnished by units previously located in the general area. Higher HQ and battalion analyses of the AO are available. Some areas selected may be in or around cities or towns. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Occupation plan is prepared IAW TSOP and is in compliance with commander's guidance. The areas selected support subordinate units and battalion HQ personnel, equipment, and mission requirements. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase occupation plan completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section verifies the suitability of the new area by ground or map reconnaissance. a. Calculates space requirements for number and type of elements and base facilities proposed in the new area. b. Identifies space availability to support number and type of elements and base facilities proposed in the new area. c. Identifies ability of area to support the battalion's equipment and vehicles.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Identifies accessibility of roads and size of areas around buildings (MOUT environment). e. Identifies availability of area cover and concealment. f. Identifies area suitability for helicopter landing sites. 2. Staff Sections provide a support analysis of tentative operational areas. a. Identify specific functional area advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas by reviewing higher HQ and battalion analyses of the AO. b. Perform analog and digital communications support analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas. c. Perform CHS analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas. d. Perform NBC defense analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas. e. Perform ADP analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas. f. Perform OPSEC analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed area. g. Perform support analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas. h. Forward analysis reports to S2/3 Section. 3. S2/3 Section selects final sites for subordinate units and the battalion HQ. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and digital communications. b. Identifies specific missions for each subordinate unit in the battalion. c. Identifies proposed locations of all subordinate units and battalion HQ.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Posts proposed battalion HQ and subordinate units' positions on the analog/digital situation map(s). e. Coordinates proposed site selections with subordinate units and battalion staff using analog and digital communications or MTS. f. Briefs proposed sites and rationale to the commander or XO for approval or modifications. g. Forwards approved site selections to higher HQ, battalion staff, and subordinate units using analog and digital communications or MTS. h. Prepares analog/digital map overlays with all appropriate boundaries, supply routes, and unit locations using symbols. 4. S2/3 Section formulates a tentative battalion and CP area layout plan. a. Designates a general location for the LOC site. b. Designates location of CP elements. c. Designates location of subordinate units. d. Prepares a traffic circulation plan that depicts the traffic pattern for key roads in the battalion area and the CP area. e. Prepares communication plan that shows wire diagrams that connect all subordinate elements and includes instructions for runners system until wire communications are operational. f. Prepares a hasty security plan that provides minimum requirements for all subordinate units. g. Disseminates battalion layout plan to all subordinate units and the battalion advance/quartering party leader using analog and digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
5. S2/3 Section plans battalion advance/quartering party activities. a. Identifies battalion advance/quartering party's personnel and equipment composition and limitations from the TSOP. b. Provides advance/quartering party personnel, equipment, and vehicle limitations to each subordinate unit. c. Provides assembly area location and reporting times to each subordinate unit. d. Coordinates forward staff personnel requirements with each staff section and the XO. e. Identifies all area preparation tasks that are not included in the TSOP. f. Briefs battalion advance/quartering party leader on area preparation, vehicles, equipment, and options caused by change in METT-TC.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Plan Battalion Area Tactical Operations (63-1-4012) (FM 101-5, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 101-5-1, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 34-130, FM 7-20)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has approved the supporting commander's (operation) estimate and provided his decision and concept of operations. The higher HQ and battalion analyses of the AO are available. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion HQ is the BCOC for the assigned area. Coordination has been established with the responsible rear operations element for required assistance, if needed. The battalion TSOP is available to provide guidance in planning future tactical activities. Tentative locations of subordinate units and support facilities have been designated. The threat has the capability of intelligence gathering and launching NBC attacks into the battalion area. The S2/3 Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications and by courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: NBC defense, OPSEC, and deception plans implement the commander's guidance, concept of operations, and provide procedures and measures to overcome or minimize the NBC and information collection threat. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase planning completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section analyzes tactical NBC information. a. Identifies established policies and procedures located in TSOP. b. Identifies NBC threat capabilities and recommended countermeasures by reviewing higher HQ NBC vulnerability analysis. c. Identifies potential targets in the battalion area for NBC weapons.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/3 Section prepares NBC defense plan. a. Establishes procedures and measures that reduce unit vulnerability through terrain shielding and increased protective measures. b. Specifies levels of protection that correspond with the NBC threat, including MOPP levels. c. Establishes procedures for receiving and submitting reports on threat use of NBC weapons, if different from those in the TSOP. d. Develops monitoring and survey plans that establish policies and procedures for subordinate units' survey, monitor, and decontamination team's operations. e. Develops personnel, equipment, and support site decontamination plan that establishes priorities for decontamination in coordination with the Support Operations Section. f. Establishes coordination procedures for requesting additional support. g. Provides commander's radiation exposure guidance. h. Establishes nuclear, biological, and chemical medical evacuation and treatment support procedures in coordination with S1 and the supporting medical element. i. Establishes alternate methods and levels of support in coordination with Support Operations Section. j. Consolidates NBC information into appropriate format IAW the TSOP. k. Forwards the NBC defense plan to the S2/3 for approval or modification. l. Disseminates the NBC defense plan to all appropriate staff sections and subordinate units using analog and digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
3. S2/3 Section prepares OPSEC plan. a. Identifies established policies and procedures in the battalion TSOP. b. Identifies threat intelligence collection capabilities. c. Identifies EEFI indicators that affect or compromise information. d. Identifies all countermeasures and deception requirements, including defense against DE devices. e. Transcribes required information from higher HQ OPSEC annexes to OPLAN. f. Consolidates OPSEC information into appropriate format IAW the TSOP. g. Forwards draft OPSEC plan to S2/3 for approval or modifications. h. Disseminates OPSEC plan to all battalion staff sections and subordinate units using analog and digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Plan Rear Operations (63-1-4014) (FM 101-5, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 100-10, FM 101-5-1, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-4, FM 7-20)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has approved the supporting commander's (operation) estimate and provided his decision and concept of operations. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The XO assigns responsibilities for the preparation of rear operations annex to S2/S3. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the rear operations annex. The responsible rear operations command and control element has provided input for the battalion's participation and integration into rear operations. The S2/S3 Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and/or digital communications and by courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Rear operations annex is prepared IAW regulations and TSOP, and conforms to the commander's and supporting rear operation element's guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase rear operations annex completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 Section develops direct and indirect fire plan. a. Identifies boundaries as assigned by the higher HQ and/or supporting rear operations command and control element. b. Identifies probable enemy avenues of approach and their effects on the battalion's area of responsibility. c. Assigns boundaries to all subordinate units and separate elements using analog and/or digital communications. NOTE: Boundaries should be based on number of personnel assigned, type of weapons systems, mission of unit and METT-TC. d. Identifies weapon systems that are available to the battalion in coordination with the supporting rear operations element.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Identifies probable engagement areas. f. Selects target reference points in coordination with designated fire support element. g. Prioritizes defense of sustainment bases and facilities in coordination with the Support Operations Section and supporting rear operations element. h. Develops fire support request and coordination measures in coordination with designated fire support element. 2. S2/S3 Section develops mobility and countermobility plan. a. Identifies all obstacle constraints and restrictions in the higher HQ and/or supporting rear operations element's plan. b. Identifies all possible obstacles by location and type. c. Identifies all available obstacle assets. d. Coordinates additional support requirements with the S4 and supporting engineer element using analog and/or digital communications. 3. S2/S3 Section develops air defense plan. a. Identifies all established air defense policies and procedures in the higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD and the battalion TSOP. b. Identifies probable air avenues of approach. c. Establishes air defense priorities for designated areas and facilities in coordination with supporting rear operations and air defense elements. d. Establishes air defense assistance coordination measures. e. Establishes air defense warning signals, if different than those set forth in TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
4. S2/S3 Section develops battalion internal response force plan. a. Identifies response force composition and requirements in the TSOP. b. Revises response force structure and subordinate units' taskings as dictated by current tactical situation. c. Identifies battalion assembly point location(s). d. Coordinates additional equipment/supply requirements with the S4 Section. e. Develops response force training plan. f. Tasks subordinate elements to provide required personnel and equipment for battalion response force based on present for duty strength and current mission. 5. S6 Section develops communications plan. a. Develops intra-base cluster analog and/or digital communications plan that encompasses all units located within the battalion's area of responsibility. b. Develops external analog and digital communications plan that interfaces with higher HQ, supporting rear operations element, fire support, and air support elements. c. Designates rear operations passwords, call signs, frequencies, and procedures. d. Coordinates overall analog and/or digital communications plan with supporting signal element and supporting rear operations element. e. Establishes a messenger system with runner as a backup communications system.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
6. S4 Section develops logistics plan in coordination with S1 Section. a. Calculates tentative logistics requirements for response force and external reaction forces. b. Designates responsibility for resupply of equipment and supplies to specific subordinate units. c. Coordinates medical treatment and evacuation plan with the supporting medical element. 7. S2/S3 Section coordinates rear operations for battalion elements in other areas of responsibility. a. Coordinates subordinate units' responsibilities with the rear operations element responsible for that area. b. Establishes rear operations policies, procedures, and reports for units outside battalion's area of responsibility. 8. S4 Section develops ADC plan in coordination with the S2/S3 Section. a. Identifies all established policies and procedures in higher HQ OPLAN and the battalion TSOP. b. Calculates probable ADC requirements in the battalion's area of responsibility. c. Identifies current ADC assets within the battalion. d. Coordinates additional support requirements with the higher HQ S4 Section. e. Assigns specific functions to all subordinate units IAW battalion TSOP. f. Coordinates ADC plans and procedures with the supporting MP element. g. Coordinates ADC priorities with Support Operations and S2/S3 Sections. h. Identifies alternate operational sites or alert sites in coordination with Support Operations Section and supporting rear operations element.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Establishes warning or alert system, if different from battalion TSOP. j. Develops ADC training and rehearsal plan. 9. S2/S3 Section prepares rear operations annex. a. Consolidates input into appropriate format. b. Coordinates draft rear operations annex with all other battalion staff sections. c. Forwards draft rear operations annex to S2/S3 for approval or modification. d. Distributes annex to all appropriate battalion staff sections, subordinate units, and supporting rear operations element using appropriate analog or digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
061-283-1002	Locate a Target by Grid Coordinates	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Establish Communications (63-1-4017) (FM 24-16, AR 380-19, AR 380-19-1, AR 530-1, FM 24-18, FM 24-22, FM 24-35, FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion communications personnel have accompanied the advance party to the new area. The TSOPs, OPORDs, and other required documents are available. The battalion advance/quartering party has secured the new area. The location for the LOC is identified. The analog and/or digital communication plan is available. Equipment and personnel are available. Initial communications are established by the advance communications element. Message service is provided on a 24-hour basis. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Analog and/or digital communications, local area networks, and generator power are established IAW the communication plan, OPORD, SOI/SSI, and TSOP. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish communication.

NOTE: The S2/3 Section must perform all the below task steps and performance measures if the battalion HQ does not have a S6 Section.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S6 Section organizes communications element of the advance/quartering party. a. Selects branch personnel to perform all communication setup tasks at new location. b. Selects required vehicles and equipment to establish communications at the new site IAW movement order or TSOP. c. Coordinates area analog and digital communication system support at the new location with supporting signal element. d. Inspects personnel, vehicles, and equipment prior to departure for compliance with TSOP and commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Dispatches communications element to assembly area. f. Ensures radio communications exist during a move between the start point and release point. 2. S6 Section provides assistance for area communications system hookup. a. Identifies location of the battalion switchboard in coordination with headquarters advance element leader. b. Identifies all other elements that require area communication system hookup. 3. Commo Section installs local and area networks. a. Determines communications service requirements. b. Ensures analog and/or digital communications links with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supported units. c. Plans backup means of communications. d. Implements backup or alternate means of communications. 4. S6 Section performs system/software security manager functions. a. Issues passwords. b. Installs anti-virus software. c. Performs CSSCS network management functions in support of Support Operatons Section. d. Coordinates with the CSSAMO to resolve application problems with CSS STAMIS and CSSCS. e. Advises the commander, staff, and subordinate units on communications matters. f. Coordinates with Support Operations Section to ensure COOP is included in communications estimate/plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
5. S6 Section establishes wire communications. a. Identifies locations of all subordinate units' CPs. b. Plans wire and telephone installation. c. Prepares a telephone traffic diagram. d. Installs telephone switchboard. e. Installs telephones. f. Lays wire for communications between switchboard and other subordinate units. g. Establishes wire communications between LOC and switchboard. h. Establishes other wire communications between switchboard and other subordinate units when area signal support personnel arrive. i. Tests each telephone circuit to ensure there are no breaks in the wire system. j. Operates the battalion switchboard. *6. S6 Section selects radio communications site. a. Selects best location for primary common site based on tactical and technical requirements in coordination with the advance/quartering party leader. b. Identifies support requirements for common site, such as fuel, water, maintenance, and rations. c. Selects alternate communications site(s). d. Selects locations away from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference. e. Establishes physical security control of COMSEC material and documents containing EEFI. f. Incorporates signal site defense plan with overall defense plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
7. S6 Section establishes generator power. a. Selects generator power sites. b. Establishes fire and fuel storage points. c. Levels generator sets. d. Conducts preoperational PMCS on generator sets. e. Grounds generator sets. f. Connects DC power cable. g. Performs generator starting procedures. h. Accomplishes transition to generator power with minimum interruption of communications. i. Constructs sound barriers and screening system to muffle noise and minimize heat signal. j. Operates generator sets IAW appropriate TM. 8. S6 Section establishes a message center. a. Establishes primary and alternate messenger routes and schedules. b. Coordinates pickup and delivery times with users. c. Identifies type of messengers to be used. d. Establishes message control and accountability procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Operate the Support Area of Logistics Operations Center (63-1-4022)
(FM 10-27-3, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 100-10, FM 101-5, FM 63-21)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Support operations have commenced. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Support requirements are generated by the supported units. The LOC is divided into two major areas, the support and the tactical support areas. Staff officers and NCOs are at their assigned duty stations. The commander and XO have specified the composition of the LOC. Higher HQ and the battalion's subordinate units are deployed and operational. Tactical and logistics information is continuously received by analog and/or digital communications, CSS STAMIS, and courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Continuous support is provided in area of responsibility to sustain operations on a 24-hour basis. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase supervisory, managerial, administrative, and coordination completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S2/S3 Officer supervises external support operations. a. Directs, redirects, cross-levels or masses sustainment resources at critical points within the battalion area of responsibility based on METT-TC and the commander's guidance. b. Establishes intransit visibility and total asset visibility of sustainment resources in and out bound to the battalion. c. Develops two-shift personnel schedules that maintain 24-hour operations. d. Conducts detailed work shift change briefings. e. Coordinates support policies and mission changes among subordinate units with higher HQ and supported units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Monitors subordinate units' operational stockage levels by reviewing CSSCS and STAMIS reports to ensure assets do not exceed requirements. g. Directs redistribution of support workload as driven by changing requirements and priorities in support of operations. h. Directs revision of customer lists as driven by changing requirements, workload, and priorities. i. Supervises coordination of weapons systems replacement as directed by higher HQ. j. Monitors transportation movement system to ensure efficient response to higher HQ directions. k. Supervises maintenance of the logistics support situation map(s). l. Supervises preparation and submission of subordinate unit terrain requirement data to supporting rear operations element. m. Supervises operations of Support Operations Section to ensure compliance with Service Support Annex and commander's guidance. n. Supervises logistics planning for contingency operations. o. Assigns liaison personnel to supported units, as required. p. Provides operational briefings to the commander that provides actual status of support to the supported units, as required. q. Monitors cargo transfer/ terminal operations in subordinate and attached direct support units. r. Maintains visibility of flatracks in subordinate and attached direct support units. s. Supervises all critical items identified on the Commander's Tracked Items List.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
t. Monitors customer wait time/order ship time of sustainment resources flowing to supported units. u. Monitors empty flatracks located within area of responsibility to ensure expeditiously returned to the distribution system. 2. S2/S3 Section coordinates support operations within area of responsibility. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and digital communications. b. Maintains current analog/digital support situation map(s) posted with all subordinate and supported unit locations. NOTE: Manual postings should be within 50 meters of actual location. c. Maintains current customer list that reflects changing requirements, workload, and priorities of tactical operations. d. Maintains current analog/digital support overlay (s) that shows locations of support facilities and their hours of operations. e. Monitors LOGSTAT reports from subordinate units to determine combat support capabilities. f. Coordinates redistribution of stock and/or assets to accommodate changing requirements and priorities. g. Coordinates stock status projections with supporting material management element's commodity managers. h. Coordinates changes to subordinate units support missions using analog and digital communications. i. Maintains a current mission essential item chart which reflects shortage supply items, command controlled items, and current equipment combat losses. j. Coordinates reorganization requirements with higher HQ staff element and supported units using analog and digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
3. S2/S3 Section supervises weapon systems replacement missions assigned by higher HQ. a. Coordinates weapon systems replacement operations at the designated subordinate unit(s) using analog and digital communications. b. Coordinates crew replacement with the replacement regulating element based on replacement requirements identified in SIDPERS reports using analog and digital communications. 4. S2/S3 Section prepares FRAGO to service support annex. a. Prepares the operational changes as specified by Support Operations Officer based on supplemental information. b. Completes the message form format IAW TSOP within the time specified by commander's or Support Operations Officer's guidance. c. Forwards draft FRAGO to Support Operations Officer for review and approval. d. Forwards approval FRAGO to S2/S3 Section for publication. e. Disseminates FRAGO to all affected elements using analog and/or digital communications. 5. S2/S3 Section maintains section workbook. a. Annotates information from incoming messages and reports under appropriate heading and cross-reference. b. Annotates in "Remarks" informal evaluation of the information, as required. c. Deletes all obsolete information from workbook. d. Formats workbook IAW TSOP. 6. S2/S3 Sections maintains daily staff journal and journal files. a. Posts all entries as prescribed by TSOP and appropriate manuals. b. Posts data immediately upon receipt or dispatch or occurrence of events.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Describes accurately and concisely information or event(s) that have occurred. d. Specifies actions taken upon receipt or dispatch of information. e. Maintains current file that contains material necessary to support entries in the daily staff journal. 7. S2/S3 Section coordinates internal requirements with battalion S1 and S4. a. Maintains current status of subordinate units' personnel strengths that directly effect the support mission. b. Maintains current status of subordinate units' supplies and equipment operational readiness that directly affects the support mission. 8. S2/S3 Sections coordinates tactical situations. a. Monitors tactical situations for indications that have or may affect support mission accomplishment. b. Coordinates repositioning of base locations based on tactical situation. c. Adjusts current operations in coordination based on NBC implications. 9. S2/S3 Section maintains current logistics and combat health services status. a. Monitors brigade radio nets, the common operational picture, FBCB2, and ATCCS messaging to track the current battle. b. Maintain Situational Awareness in the common operational picture. (1) Monitor actions that trigger preplanned logistics actions. (2) Coordinates adjustments to throughput schedules based on the tactical situation. c. Maintains the logistics overlay using the CTP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Maintains the logistics synchronization matrix using CSSCS. e. Maintain status of all units in the brigade task force using CSSCS. f. Monitor the requisition, acquisition, storage, and distribution of supplies using CSSCS. g. Monitors the distribution of the controlled supply of ammunition using CSSCS. h. Monitors the maintenance status of damaged/nonmission capable vehicles using CSSCS and projects their expected availability. i. Makes recommendations to the FSB commander based upon the tactical situation where logistics support is about to surge. j. Monitor Weapon System Replacement Operations. k. Monitor Graves Registration and Mortuary Affairs activities.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
Communications Section

TASK: Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center (63-1-4037) (FM 101-5, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 100-10, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 3-5)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion's support operations have commenced. The LOC is divided into two major areas, the support and the tactical support areas. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Threat has the capability to employ units in rear areas, to disrupt support to fighting units, and to use EW to disrupt communications. The operation of the LOC is required to coordinate the battalion's tactical activities. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All tactical information relative to the battalion's survival is disseminated to all subordinate and attached units. At MOPP4, performance factors minimally degrade LOC operational efficiency.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S2/3 supervises tactical support area operations. a. Assigns specific areas of responsibility and work shifts to all assigned staff members for a 24-hour operation. b. Enforces sleep plans that are consistent with phases of the operation. c. Monitors the performance of personnel in their functional areas to ensure compliance with established guidance and the TSOP. d. Conducts detailed shift change briefings. e. Provides briefing on current tactical situation to the commander and/or XO. f. Coordinates tactical support area operations with higher, adjacent, and lower HQ using analog and/or digital communications or MTS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Disseminates information to higher, adjacent, and lower HQ using analog and/or digital communications or MTS. h. Conducts continuous intelligence preparation of the battlefield. 2. Commo Section maintains analog and/or digital communications systems. a. Monitors all radio/digital networks in order of priority as specified in the OPORD and/or TSOP. b. Operates battalion NCS IAW TSOP, OPORD, and SOI/SSI. c. Develops alternate communications plan for implementation when established methods are disrupted or fail. d. Issues passwords to subordinate and attached units. e. Installs anti-virus software on automation equipment belonging to subordinate and attached units. 3. S2/3 Section disseminates intelligence and weather information. a. Inspects intelligence summaries and reports for pertinency to battalion operations and security. b. Inspects weather reports for data that could have significant effects on the battalion's security. c. Forwards pertinent intelligence and weather information to all subordinate units using analog and digital communications. 4. S2/3 Section supervises battalion's participation in the higher HQ OPSEC plan. a. Disseminates higher HQ countermeasure requirements to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications. b. Supervises implementation of countermeasures that overcome threat capabilities in SIGINT, HUMINT, and imagery collection.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Inspects subordinate units' positions for OPSEC compliance and effectiveness. d. Provides feedback reports to higher HQ on activities that affect OPSEC measures using analog and/or digital communications. 5. S2/3 Section coordinates NBC defense activities. a. Disseminates higher HQ NBC data that pertains to battalion operations to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications. b. Supervises NBC defense preparations as directed by the higher HQ staff element and/or the commander. 6. S2/3 Section performs tactical support area duties. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications. b. Maintains current staff journal(s) entries IAW current command policy and TSOP. c. Maintains current analog/digital operational maps and overlays depicting all friendly and enemy locations within 50 meters of actual location that affect the battalion's operations. NOTE: All manual entries are posted within 50 meters of actual location. d. Maintains section workbook(s) that contain incoming messages and reports under the appropriate heading and cross-references. e. Maintains current journal files that contain material necessary to support all daily staff journal entries. f. Maintains current NBC analog/digital situation maps and overlays.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Maintain Communications (63-1-4041) (FM 24-35, AR 380-19, AR 380-19-1, AR 530-1, FM 24-18, FM 24-33, FM 24-35-1, FM 3-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Operations have commenced. Coordination of operations is conducted by analog and/or digital means of communications and courier. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The threat is capable of locating, identifying, and rapidly exploiting all types of communications. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Uninterrupted 24-hour analog and/or digital communications is provided to battalion HQ and all subordinate units through one or more external means. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to maintain the communications system.

NOTE: The S2/3 Section must perform all the below task steps and performance measures if the battalion HQ does not have a S6 Section.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Commo Section performs functions related to information technology operations. a. Exercises staff supervision over communications services. b. Identifies requirements for communications services. c. Issues passwords to subordinate and attached units. d. Installs software on automation equipment belonging to subordinate and attached units. e. Performs CSSCS network management functions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Coordinates with CSSAMO to resolve application problems with CSS STAMIS and CSSCS. g. Identifies communications links with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supported units. 2. Commo Section performs network management functions for all tactical automation. a. Troubleshoots hardware needing repair. b. Monitors contractor repair performance. c. Collects status from subordinate and attached elements for the Army Battlefield Command System and the CSSAMO for CSS STAMIS. 3. Commo Section performs functions in support of local area networks. a. Installs local area networks. b. Operates local area networks. c. Operates the battalion switchboard. d. Serves as net control station. e. Performs unit level maintenance on all communications electronic equipment in HQ element. 4. Commo Section operates NCS. a. Opens net IAW current SOI/SSI. b. Challenges all stations in net as required in the SOI/SSI. c. Controls entry and departure of all stations. d. Corrects all errors in net operating procedures. e. Enforces station and net restrictions. f. Observes radio and listening silence periods as prescribed by Division OPORD or the commander's directives.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Completes transition to extended range of radio station within 15 minutes, if required. h. Remote radio station(s) at least one kilometer, if required. 5. Commo Section manages message traffic. a. Processes messages by precedence, date, and time group IAW the TSOP. b. Processes incoming messages without errors. c. Forwards incoming messages to appropriate element or section. d. Checks outgoing messages for completeness and readability. e. Employs approved radiotelephone procedures. f. Transmits messages IAW precedence, correct format, and prescribed text. g. Employs approved codes and brevity lists when transmitting the names of persons, places, and sensitive information. h. Decrypts all incoming messages. i. Encrypts all outgoing messages. j. Transmits messages for no longer than 20 seconds. k. Employs lowest operational power setting consistent with operational requirements. l. Monitors radio communications during unit moves between the SP and the RP. 6. Commo Section employs SIGSEC measures. a. Employs COMSEC measures IAW SOI/SSI to deny friendly telecommunications information to the enemy. b. Employs ELSEC measures IAW SOI/SSI to protect electromagnetic transmissions, other than communications devices, from threat detection.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Evaluates TEMPEST controls to identify emanation vulnerabilities and countermeasures. d. Processes initial MIJI Feeder Voice Template Reports from assigned and attached elements. e. Forwards MIJI Feeder Voice Template Reports to Division HQ and supporting signal element IAW TSOP and SOI/SSI. 7. S6 Section maintains landline communications. a. Maintains wire communications between the battalion CP and all assigned and attached elements. b. Maintains a hot loop between the CP and all assigned and attached elements, if switchboard is not available. c. Establishes messenger runner when land communications is inoperative. 8. Radio operators implement remedial ECCM. a. Identify whether the source of interference is internal or external by the radio antenna. b. Continue to operate in an attempt to communicate through the jamming. c. Switch to high power on receiver-transmitters. d. Recommend distant stations switch to high power. e. Relocate radio set (mobile units) to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming. f. Relocate the antenna to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming. g. Submit initial MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to supporting Signal Telecommunications Battalion (Area) signal element using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Reroute message traffic using alternate means of communications (such as relay [through another station] or wire). i. Request, using alternate means, that the net change to a backup frequency. 9. Radio operators implement AM remedial ECCM. a. Identify whether the source of interference is internal or external by the radio antenna. b. Continue to operate in an attempt to communicate through the jamming. c. Check for intentional or unintentional interference. d. Check equipment grounding. e. Use radio frequency gain/frequency vernier in an attempt to work through the jamming. f. Relocate the radio set (mobile units) to take advantage of terrain features to reduce effects of jamming. g. Relocate the antenna to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming. h. Submit MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to the Signal Telecommunications Battalion (Area) signal element using analog land digital communications or appropriate BFACS. i. Reroute message traffic using alternate means of communications (such as relay [through another radio station], FM, or wire). j. Request, using alternate means, that the net change to alternate frequency.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
10. Commo Section maintains generator power. a. Operates generators IAW appropriate TM. b. Constructs sound barrier and screening system to muffle noise and minimize heat signature. c. Constructs fuel storage and fire control point for all generators as prescribed by the TSOP and commander's guidance. 11. Commo Section provides unit level maintenance support. a. Responds to calls for assistance within 30 minutes. b. Makes organizational level repairs on communications equipment. c. Evacuates equipment to DS maintenance unit. d. Maintains authorized PLL levels. e. Picks up repaired equipment from DS maintenance unit.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
113-573-8006	Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Provide Command and Control (63-1-4045) (FM 10-27-3, AR 530-1, FM 100-10, FM 101-5, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Support operations have commenced. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. During operations, members of the Command Section become casualties. Field expedient and natural shelters are available. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command Section commands and controls all subordinate unit activities IAW plans, established policies and directives, and the TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time of decision making procedures and activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Command Section supervises activities of subordinate units. a. Directs, redirects, cross-levels, or masses logistics and CHS resources within area of responsibility based on guidance from higher HQ and METT-TC. b. Monitors performance of subordinate elements to ensure required level of efficiency as prescribed in plans, policies, directives, and the TSOP, is maintained. c. Monitors support plans to determine overall effectiveness. d. Assigns specific tasks to subordinate units. e. Monitors implementation of decisions, directives, and instructions to determine subordinate unit's compliance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Issues FRAGOs to implement changes to the OPORD and annexes using analog and/or digital communications. g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. *2. XO supervises staff activities. a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making. b. Formulates staff operating policies. c. Supervises maintenance of master policy files. d. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance. e. Coordinates assigned mission with subordinate units' commanders using analog and/or digital communications. f. Supervises the operations of the LOC. 3. Command Section exchanges information. a. Transforms pertinent information into usable data for decision making. b. Coordinates information exchange within and with higher, adjacent, and subordinate units using analog and digital communications. c. Conducts operational briefings as necessary. 4. Command Section provides staff liaison. a. Provides planning assistance to any supported units, if requested. b. Provides assistance in planning contingency operations, when required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
5. Command Section maintains policy files. a. Maintains current policy files by tabbing and indexing. b. Maintains current staff journals. c. Maintains current section's workbook files. d. Maintains current section situation maps and overlays using analog and/or digital communications. 6. Command Section reacts to loss of key personnel. a. Realigns staff based on line of succession or commander's guidance. b. Maintains continuity of operations. c. Forwards casualty reports to higher HQ S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Operate Base Cluster Operations Center (63-1-4050) (FM 10-27-3, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 100-10, FM 101-5, FM 3-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Enemy units have been spotted in the support area. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Initial reports indicate the threat potential is Level II or III. During Level II and III threats, the tactical portion of the LOC assumes the duties of a BCOC. Threat has the capability to employ units into the rear areas to disrupt support to forward areas. The rear operations annex and TSOP are available. Threat information is provided by the higher HQ staff element and/or the supporting rear operations element. The operation of the BCOC is required to coordinate defensive measures in the assigned battalion area. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All defensive reactions and survival techniques are coordinated and orchestrated by the BCOC IAW rear operations plan and the TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors minimally decrease BCOC operational efficiency.

NOTE: S2/3 Section must perform all task steps, if unit does not have an S6 Section.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Commo Section establishes rear operations communications network. a. Maintains analog and/or digital communications with the BCOC. b. Establishes analog and/or digital communications with the supporting rear operations element. c. Establishes analog and/or digital communications with the higher HQ staff element. d. Establishes analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. e. Develops alternate communications plan that is implemented when established methods are disrupted or fail.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/S3 Section coordinates base cluster defensive activities. a. Consolidates base defense plans into the overall battalion defensive plan. b. Consolidates base ADC plans into the overall battalion ADC plan. c. Prepares priority listing that identifies the support facilities that have the greatest impact on the current operation. d. Conducts base assessment of each base and its defense measures to ensure compliance with the rear operation plan. e. Forwards battalion sector's tactical situation and status to higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications. f. Corrects all identified base defense weaknesses in coordination with base commanders. g. Maintains current IPB as products are disseminated by higher HQ and supporting rear operations element. h. Designates internal response force based on number of personnel, type weapons, and current mission of each base in the battalion area. i. Establishes coordination with MP units and other available response forces to plan response to Level II or III threat using analog and/or digital communications. j. Coordinates NBC defense operations with higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications. k. Provides input to the commander and XO on positioning newly arriving units in the battalion area. 3. S2/S3 Section coordinates preengagement preparation measures. a. Plots location(s) of threat force on the analog/digital situation map(s) as SPOTREPs are received. b. Disseminates current threat size and location to all subordinate units using analog and digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Forwards all SPOTREPs to higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications. d. Implements defense condition level consistent with threat size and equipment. e. Directs redeployment of all isolated support teams and supply points to closest BCOC in coordination with the supporting rear operations element. f. Directs preliminary loading of all nonessential equipment and supplies, and positioning of vehicles for immediate exit by all subordinate units. g. Briefs commander and XO on current tactical situation to include redeployment recommendations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
Communications Section

TASK: Direct Response to Threat Actions (63-1-4052) (FM 10-27-3, AR 380-19, AR 380-19-1, AR 530-1, FM 101-5, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Enemy elements have been sighted in the battalion's AO. Reports indicate the threat potential at Level II or III. The BCOC is operational. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital or analog devices. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Bases in the cluster have reported Level I attacks. Subordinate elements are providing current SITREPs. Threat information is provided by the higher HQ staff element and the supporting rear operations element. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The enemy is repelled and/or delayed until battalion is relieved by MP elements or a TCF. The battalion's pre-established degradation of support is maintained. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors minimally decrease rear operations activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Command Section makes appropriate response determination. a. Verifies threat level(s). b. Identifies capability of base(s) being threatened. c. Verifies base(s) priority as established by the defense plan. 2. S2/3 Section reports threat location and size. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications. b. Maintains analog/digital map surveillance of enemy force as information is received in subordinate unit's SPOTREP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Forwards SPOTREP to higher HQ staff element and/or supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS. d. Disseminates current threat information to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS. 3. S2/3 Section coordinates base cluster response. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. b. Maintains digital communications with all elements using appropriate BFACS. c. Establishes security level consistent with threat size and equipment. d. Forwards SITREP to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element as situation changes. e. Reports current situation to subordinate units as soon as situation changes. f. Recalls isolated support elements to predetermined defensive positions within the base cluster. g. Assembles internal response forces at predesignated rally points as prescribed by defense plan. h. Coordinates internal response force commitment with the higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element. i. Directs internal response force maneuvers to delay and deny the enemy penetration into established lines. j. Coordinates MP, CAS, and preplanned indirect fire support with higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element, as appropriate. k. Identifies projected degradation levels within the battalion in coordination with the higher HQ staff element and all major customer units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
l. Forwards identified degradation levels to higher HQ staff element. m. Maintains current analog/digital situation maps showing current locations of all friendly and enemy forces. n. Coordinates additional security requirements for movement of support through affected areas with higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element. o. Coordinates threat NBC activities with higher HQ staff element section and/or supporting rear operations element. p. Makes recommendations to commander on partial or total suspension of all support functions until threat is driven from the AO or the MPs or TCF relieves the units. q. Directs repositioning of units in base cluster(s) for better defensive position that is consistent with the tactical situation. r. Downgrades security level as the threat is driven from area or defeated. 4. S2/3 Section supervises reorganization of base cluster defense. a. Performs damage assessment of area of responsibility by reviewing SITREPs from cluster subelements. b. Directs cluster defense plan adjustments, as required. c. Coordinates base cluster resupply plan with the S4 Section, higher HQ S4 Section, and supporting rear operations element using appropriate analog and/or digital communications or BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Direct Area Damage Control Operations (63-1-4053) (FM 10-27-3, FM 100-14, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 3-5, FM 5-103)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Enemy attacks have caused destruction to units and facilities in the battalion's area. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Limited support operations are reinstated. Complete restoration of support operations is required for sustainment of combat operations. ADC teams are designated. The commander has established ADC priorities. Higher HQ provides limited assistance. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Restoration activities are conducted and additional requirements are coordinated IAW commander's priorities and guidance, OPORD, and TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors minimally decrease ADC activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Command Section and S4 Section establish Control and Assessment CP. a. Identify personnel requirements for Control and Assessment CP. b. Identify established policies and procedures by reviewing the rear operations annex and the TSOP. c. Set up ADC situation maps.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. Command Section and S4 Section coordinate base cluster restoration activities using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS. a. Identify requirements and taskings by reviewing ADC plan and TSOP. b. Alert Control and Assessment Teams. c. Establish ADC communications to transmit all required communications. d. Coordinate ADC operations with higher HQ S2/3 Section and supporting rear operations element. e. Maintain ADC situation maps. f. Establish control of affected subordinate units. g. Calculate damage control effectiveness of subordinate units. h. Release operational subordinate units to commanders for continuance of support mission. i. Forward unit effectiveness reports to higher HQ S2/3 Section and supporting rear operations element. j. Provide ADC operational update to commander. k. Monitor environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 3. Command Section and S4 Section direct recovery activities. a. Establish priorities for affected facilities. b. Task subordinate elements for rescue and decontamination teams, as required. c. Provide locations of decontamination sites to subordinate units. d. Identify locations of emergency food, clothing, water, and shelter.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Coordinate emergency treatment and evacuation with the supporting medical element using appropriate BFACS. f. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. 4. Command Section and S4 Section coordinate additional support requirements. a. Coordinate engineer support with supporting rear operations element. b. Coordinate MP support with supporting rear operations element. c. Coordinate EOD support with supporting rear operations element. d. Coordinate labor support with supporting rear operations element. e. Coordinate additional ADC requirements with higher HQ S2/3 Section using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Communications Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order (63-1-4873) (FM 100-17, FM 101-5, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher HQ is at a normal state of deployment readiness and receives a warning order to go to an increased deployability posture in preparation for overseas deployment. The SDO or 1SG has notified the commander. This task occurs concurrently with directing deployment alert activities. The movement plan, recall plan, RSOP, TSOP security plan, unit access rosters, and current maps are available. Higher HQ subordinate units are deploying as part of the higher HQ deployment. The higher HQ communicates with subordinate units by analog and/or digital means of communication, automation systems, and courier. Deployment planning activities are performed under all day and night environmental conditions, except NBC. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Movement plans are completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commander directs deployment planning IAW higher HQ guidance. a. Identifies deployment mission requirements by reviewing the WARNO and appropriate CONPLAN. b. Briefs staff on deployment mission. c. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units. d. Directs S2/3 to verify details of mission. e. Directs S2/3 to update the OPLANs. f. Directs S2/3 to validate subordinate units' movement plans. g. Directs security officer to initiate security plan. h. Directs XO to prepare commander's briefing.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Conducts commander's briefing. j. Verifies readiness status. *2. XO coordinates staff planning. a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making. b. Assigns staff responsibilities for preparing movement/deployment plans. c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance. d. Coordinates deployment mission with subordinate unit commanders. e. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing. f. Prepares commander's briefing. g. Identifies redeployment criteria. 3. S2/3 Section analyzes mission. a. Identifies all specified and implied tasks in the WARNO. b. Identifies all documented policies and procedures. c. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ. d. Coordinates with S1 section for personnel analysis of mission. e. Coordinates with S4 section for logistics and movement analysis of mission. f. Verifies maps and overlays for current mission. g. Coordinates with security officer to incorporate risk management procedures into the OPLANs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Incorporates force protection measures into OPLANs. i. Briefs commander and staff on deployment mission. 4. Staff Sections conduct readiness review of subordinate units. a. Provides personnel readiness review. b. Performs logistics readiness review. c. Performs OPSEC readiness review. d. Identifies readiness issues. e. Provides recommendations to improve readiness. 5. S4 Section validates movement plan. a. Validates movement plans for all modes of transportation indicated in the WARNO. b. Validates equipment status against MCSR. c. Validates AUEL of subordinate units against unit property books. d. Coordinates for S2/3 review of subordinate unit and higher HQ movement plans. *6. Staff officers supervise staff actions. a. Identify tasks that must be accomplished in order to deploy by reviewing the movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLANs, and commander's guidance. b. Exchange pertinent information relevant to the deployment with the other staff sections. c. Direct preparation of input to the S2/3 Section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's briefing, as required. d. Identify section requirements for deployment verification checklist.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
S4 Section

TASK: Plan Battalion Redeployment (63-1-4874) (FM 100-17, FM 101-5, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion receives a WARNO to deploy to home station. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the TAA. All personnel are present or accounted for, weapons and sensitive equipment have been secured, and inventories of vehicles, equipment, and supplies have been conducted. Personnel and equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate higher HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. The readiness RSOP and deployment WARNO are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Redeployment Movement Plan is completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commander directs redeployment planning.		
a. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units.		
b. Directs S2/3 to prepare OPORD.		
c. Directs S2/3 to validate subordinate units' Movement Plans.		
d. Directs Security Officer to update Security Plan.		
e. Directs S1 to verify SRP activities.		
*2. Staff officers analyze mission.		
a. Identify tasks in the WARNO.		
b. Identify documented policies and procedures.		
c. Coordinate mission parameters and details with higher HQ.		
d. Coordinate with the S1 Section for personnel analysis of mission.		
e. Coordinate with the S4 Section for logistics and movement analysis of mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Prepare battalion OPORD. g. Verify redeployment maps and overlays. h. Brief commander on redeployment mission. *3. XO coordinates staff planning. a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making. b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating redeployment plans. c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance. d. Coordinates redeployment mission with subordinate unit commanders. e. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing. 4. Staff sections conduct readiness review of subordinate units. a. Provide personnel readiness review. b. Perform logistics readiness review. c. Perform OPSEC readiness review. d. Identify readiness issues. e. Make recommendations to bring unit to designated readiness level. 5. S4 Section validates deployment plans. a. Validates equipment status. b. Validates AUEL for subordinate units. c. Coordinates for S2/3 review of subordinate units and battalion redeployment movement plans.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*6. Staff officers supervise staff sections. a. Direct preparation of redeployment plans and orders. b. Direct preparation of draft input for commander's brief.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

EXTERNAL EVALUATION

6-1. GENERAL. An external evaluation is designed to provide the unit commander and his higher HQ with an evaluation of the unit's ability to perform its critical wartime missions. Feedback from an external evaluation is also used as a key input for the planning and development of future unit training activities. The unit's METL, in conjunction with the T&EOs of this ARTEP MTP (Chapter 5), provides the primary basis and focus for an external evaluation. An external evaluation is usually planned, administered, and evaluated by the battalion. The frequency of such evaluations will be prescribed at the discretion of the unit's chain of command.

6-2. PREPARING THE EVALUATION. A successful evaluation depends on proper preparation, including planning, coordination, and where applicable, a rehearsal or OC talk-through of the major exercise events. The written evaluation plan must contain the pertinent evaluation details.

a. Preparing the Evaluation Instrument. The sample evaluation scenario for the unit is provided in Table 6-1. Figure 6-1, page 6-4, is a graphic representation of the scenario.

Table 6-1. Sample evaluation scenario

SEQUENCE	EVENTS	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED
1.	Administrative preparation	Before start time

Day 1

	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	
1.	Receive and Verify Warning Order	10 min
2.	Direct Deployment Alert Activities	10 min
3.	Establish the Emergency Operation Center	2 hr
4.	Operate Emergency Operations Center	10 hr
5.	Supervise Battalion Deployment Activities	3 hr
6.	Coordinate Soldiers Readiness Program (SRP) Support	3 hr
7.	Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Support	4 hr
8.	Coordinate Family Assistance Plan	2 hr
9.	Coordinate Deployment Training Support	2 hr
10.	Perform deployment Intelligence Support functions	2 hr
11.	Provide Deployment Logistics Support	8 hr
12.	Update Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
13.	Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	2 hr
14.	Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	2 hr
15.	Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	4 hr
16.	AAR	1 hr

Table 6-1. Sample evaluation scenario (continued)

SEQUENCE	EVENTS	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED
	Day 2	
	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	
1.	Coordinate Relocation of Subordinate Elements	2 hr
2.	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements	2 hr
3.	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	4 hr
4.	Coordinate Onward Movement	1 hr
5.	Supervise Road March	30 min
6.	Threat Interdictions	40 min
7.	Continue Road March	30 min
8.	AAR	1 hr
	Day 3	
	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	
1.	Cross Release Points	10 min
2.	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	4 hr
3.	Establish Battalion Command Post	2 hr
4.	Supervise Establishment of Battalion HQ and Battalion's Area	6 hr
5.	AAR	1 hr
	Day 4	
	Direct Transportation Support	
1.	Conduct Mission Analysis	1 hr
2.	Develop Staff Estimates	1 hr
3.	Prepare Operations Order/Plan and Annexes	1 hr
4.	AAR	1 hr
5.	Provide Transportation Services	8 hr
6.	Threat Interdictions	30 min
7.	AAR	1 hr

Table 6-1. Sample evaluation scenario (continued)

SEQUENCE	EVENTS	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED
	Day 5	
	Supervise Force Protection	
1.	Threat Interdictions	30 min
2.	Level II/III Attacks	30 min
3.	Defense Responses	30 min
4.	Damage Assessment	2 hr
5.	Restoration of Support	2 hr
6.	AAR	1 hr
	Day 6	
	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station	
1.	Receive Warning Order for Redeployment	10 min
2.	Coordinate Reconstitution of the TMT Battalion for Redeployment	2 hr
3.	Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
4.	Supervise Battalion Redeployment Activities	2 hr
5.	Provide Redeployment Support	2 hr
6.	Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	2 hr
7.	Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	2 hr
8.	Coordinate Home Station Activities	2 hr
9.	Final AAR	2 hr

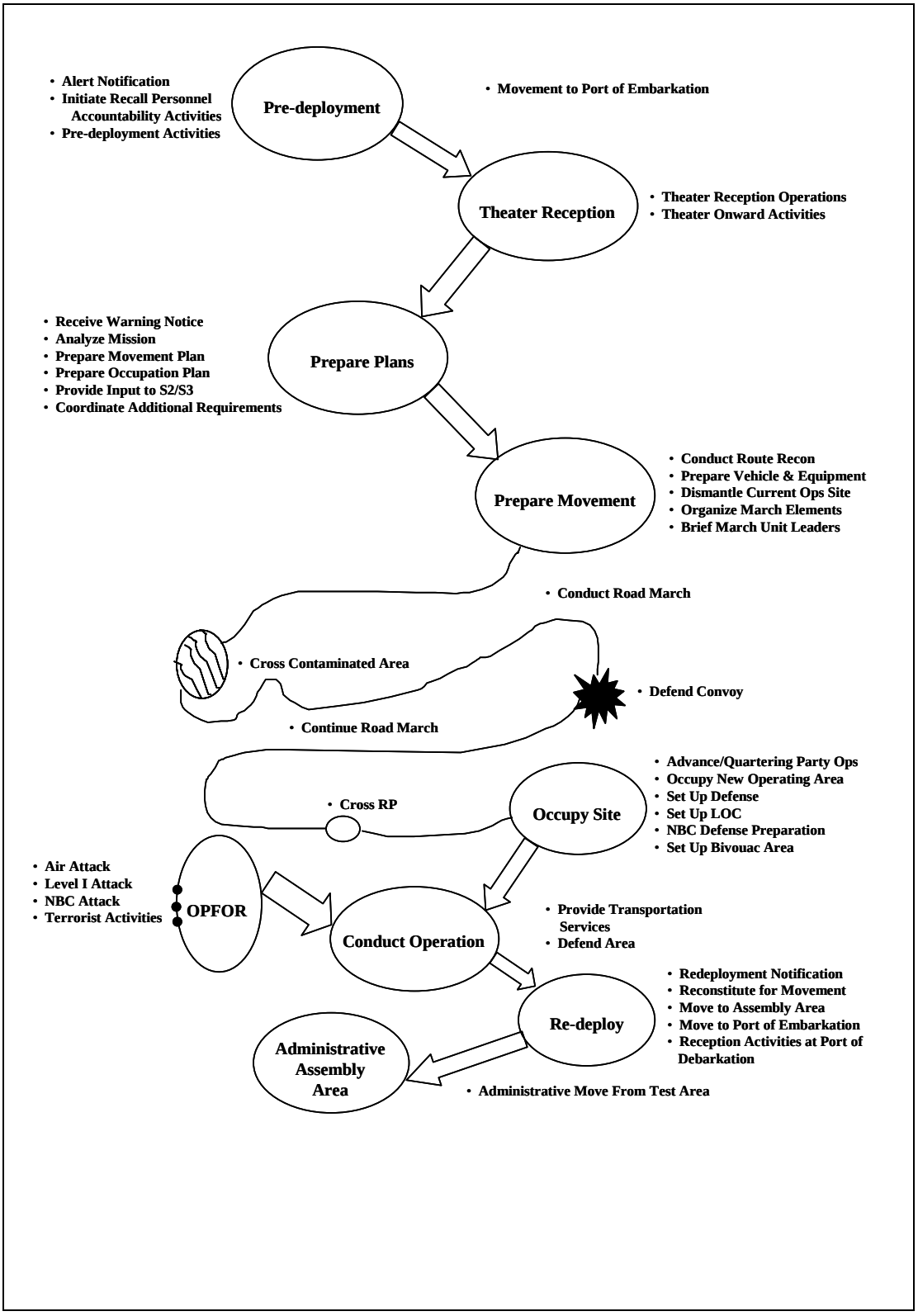


Figure 6-1. Example of graphic scenario

(1) Identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element using Table 2-1. Record the selected missions in the UPW, Figure 6-2.

	Unit: _____				Date: _____	
No.	Unit Mission/Task	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Unit Overall Rating & Remarks
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
*If more space is required for remarks use the back side of this form						

Figure 6-2. Example unit proficiency worksheet

(2) List each mission on a task summary sheet (Figure 6-3).

TASK SUMMARY SHEET			
TASK TITLES	**T&EO NUMBER**	**EVALUATION**	
		GO	**NO GO**

Observer/Controller's Signature_____
NOTE: A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. Observer/Controller's comments may be placed on an enclosure to the task summary sheet.

Figure 6-3. Example unit task summary sheet

(3) Select the task for the evaluation of every mission. List the selection tasks on the task summary sheets, which are used for recording the results of the evaluation.

(4) Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order they logically occur in the detailed scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations (see Table 6-1, Sample Evaluation Scenario). Parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct in process AAR's.

b. Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources. Resource requirements and planning considerations are identified as the evaluation is expanded and developed. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating unit will prepare their own consolidated support requirements.

Table 6-2. Example consolidated support requirements

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56 mm (Blank)	150 rds/per wpn
7.62 mm (Blank)	100 rds/per wpn
Smoke Grenades	2/per unit/OPFOR
Simulator, Arty	6/OPFOR
Blank Adapters	1/per wpn
MILES	one set per soldier/equipment
CS Grenades	3/OPFOR

EQUIPMENT

All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA items authorized.

FUEL

Use OPLOGPLN '98 to calculate fuel requirements.

NBC EQUIPMENT	QUANTITY
AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	1 per unit
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant	1 each

OTHER

Field rations	as required
War Wound Moulage Set	1 each
Aircraft for simulated air attacks	1 each
M256 Chemical Detector Kit (Training)	1 each

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this FTX are suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all the items in this table.

c. Selecting and Preparing the Field Evaluation Site. Required size, type of terrain, OPFOR requirements, and administrative requirements are the basis for site selection. For this evaluation an area of _____ meters X _____ meters was selected. The OPFOR is positioned according to threat doctrine. The site must provide space for the administrative area required to support the evaluation.

d. Planning Indirect Fire Simulation. Reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation because it greatly influences the outcome of the battle. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.

(1) The fire marker control system outlined in TC 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. This method may be difficult to support due to the amount of required resources.

(2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to react to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters, which will simulate the tactical FDC. The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the OCs who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the OC may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. The FM 25-series provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

6-3. SELECTING THE OBSERVER/CONTROLLERS.

a. OCs must know the unit's missions, organization, equipment, and employment. Senior OC should be at least equal in rank to the unit commander and have successfully performed in that specific or similar command position.

b. The following are minimum rank and experience for OCs:

(1) Company OC will be an officer with company command experience.

(2) Platoon or section OCs will be an LT or NCO with platoon or selection experience.

(3) Recorder will be an officer or NCO at the evaluation control headquarters who receives "kill" information or results and time data from the OCs.

6-4. TRAINING THE OBSERVER/CONTROLLERS. OCs standardize administration of the evaluation by understanding the following functional areas.

a. Evaluation Design. Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. OCs must thoroughly understand and correctly implement the evaluation.

b. MILES. Each OC, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES system being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functioning before each part of the scenario.

c. Evaluation Control System. This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

(1) Rules of engagement.

(2) OC duties and responsibilities.

(3) Communication system.

(4) Evaluation data collection plan.

6-5. RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION.

a. The evaluating HQ develops the data recording instruments for the OCs. The Unit Data Sheet (Figure 6-4, page 6-10) documents demographic information that may reflect on a unit's performance. The Environmental Data Sheet (Figure 6-5, page 6-11) documents weather information that helps observe missions under differing environmental conditions. The Personnel and Equipment Loss Report (Figure 6-6, page 6-12) documents information that may affect the unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR.

b. The senior OC has the overall responsibility for preparation of the external evaluation. This evaluation is based on his own finding and his subordinate OCs input. Subordinate OCs use the task evaluation criteria (T&EO from Chapter 5 and the task summary sheets), to determine overall proficiency in their particular areas. The senior OC compiles the external evaluation results as prescribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the company OC may be addressed in the senior OC comments portion of the UPW.

6-6. SELECTING AND TRAINING THE OPFOR. The selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influence the condition under which the evaluation is administered. The unit should face an opponent who realistically resembles the threat in strength, weapon, and skill.

a. Selection. Any qualified skill level 1 or 2 soldier can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.

b. Training. The OPFOR must understand the following six major areas:

(1) Installation and operation of the MILES devices.

(2) Rules of engagement.

(3) Threat small unit tactics

(4) Training scenarios.

(5) OPFOR weapons and equipment, if available.

(6) Safety.

UNIT DATA SHEET

1. UNIT DESIGNATION _____
DATE: _____

2. UNIT LEADERS: (CIRCLE MOST CORRECT ANSWER)

POSITION	RANK	TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)				
CMDR	CPT/LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
XO	1LT/2LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
PLT LDR	1LT/2LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
PLT SGT	SFC/SSG	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
SEC LDR	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19

3. UNIT STRENGTH (excluding leaders):
_____

4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (major items):
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

5. COMMENTS:
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

EVALUATOR SIGNATURE:
_____

Figure 6-4. Unit data sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET
EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:
DATE/TIME EXERCISE STARTED:
DATE/TIME EXERCISE ENDED:
1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) Clear Partly Cloudy Hazy Raining Snowing Fog Other: Temperature
2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) Dry Wet Ice Snow Other:
3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) Day Night Moon Phase ¼ ½ ¾ Full Average Range of Visibility Due to Light:
4. TERRAIN (Circle appropriate description) Flat Rolling Mountainous Jungle Desert Urban Arctic Other: Top Soil: Sandy Rocky Clay Other: Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:
5. REMARKS:

Figure 6-5. Environmental data sheet

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
Mission Title Or Task Number	Date/Time Of Enemy Contact	Friendly KIA/WIA	Enemy KIA/WIA	Friendly Vehicles Destroyed	Enemy Vehicles Destroyed
COMMENTS:					

Figure 6-6. Personnel and equipment loss report

c. OPFOR Strength.

(1) Offense. Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three to one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR is stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional unit will be successful. They must be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the unit's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the unit a realistic challenge, but one that the unit can defeat when proper tactics are employed.

(2) Defense. The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three to one ratio of superiority, because anything less will not have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct a successful attack. They must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all units will quickly defeat. Once the OPFOR establishes their plan, they must use the same plan for all other like units for that event in order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.

6-7. CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION. An evaluation is divided into three distinct areas. Each area requires a different degree of preparation and coordination.

a. Pre-evaluation.

(1) The senior OC and all other OCs must recon the evaluation area to know the unit's boundaries, disposition of the OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the field evaluation site's area of operation.

(2) The unit must prepare an OPORD and FRAGO to control the exercise. An order is prepared for each mission in the evaluation scenario. These can be prepared by using the skeleton orders contained in the STX's contained in Chapter 4.

(3) Unit preparatory activities include installation and troubleshooting of MILES equipment, loading vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistics and administrative actions, as required.

(4) The OPFOR is placed in position and briefed while the unit is conducting its preparatory activities.

(5) In this evaluation scenario, the unit is issued a movement order to move to an assembly area. When the assembly area has been occupied, the OPORD is issued. The OCs should make an equipment functions check after the unit occupies the assembly area and after the unit leaders have issued their instructions.

b. Evaluation.

(1) The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways. First, it uses measures established in both the movement order and in paragraphs 3 and 5 in the OPORD or FRAGO. Second, the team controls the evaluation through the team commander (simulated by the senior OC for this evaluation) on the team net. The team does not control in the traditional sense, instead it accompanies the unit as observes. Only the senior OC has direct verbal contact with the unit commander. All other OCs do not speak to, aid, advice, and point out positions or in any way

to influence the unit's performance, except for a possible or actual safety issue of emergency. OCs are neutral throughout the evaluation.

(2) Once the senior OC issues the OPORD and movement order, the unit commander executes the event and actions prescribed in the first part of the evaluation scenario within the estimated time. From this point on, all successive parts begins with a FRAGO.

(3) The senior OC terminates a part when the unit has completed all the events and actions in a particular area or has suffered so many casualties or damage that the part cannot be completed. The OC must record the reason for the termination in the margin of the OCs Task Summary Sheets and report his action to the evaluation control headquarters. In the sample evaluation scenario, the completion of each event or action is indicated by "conducting sustain operations." During this period, the senior OC will direct the unit to remain in position while "replacements" (personnel and equipment designated as killed or destroyed) are sent forward to reconstitute the unit. At this time, the OC must perform the following actions:

(a) Inspect all MILES equipment and record "kill" codes and reset equipment. Any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment is replaced.

(b) Resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. This information is reported to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Debrief the unit to resolve questions. Afterwards, the senior OC directs the unit to continue its mission after it receives a FRAGO or OPORD for the next part.

(4) The OCs should follow these guidelines.

(a) Report major "kills" (vehicles, groups).

(b) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct fire effectiveness. Both significant firing and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Enforce rules of engagement.

(d) Observe critical tactical events of time. OCs must spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome.

(e) Record travel routes and unit's location.

(f) Inform OPFOR controllers of the unit's location, direction, and intent. This is necessary to enable OPFOR action to be controlled in accordance with the desired sequence of events.

(g) Enforce safety.

(h) Terminate mission.

c. Post Evaluation. After the evaluation is terminated, the unit moves to an assembly area and performs the following actions.

(1) The unit OC debriefs subordinate OCs and compiles all data (evaluator packets) for the evaluation.

(2) The unit OC must complete the task summary sheets.

(3) The unit OC must turn in all completed OC packets (with the OC scoring system) to control headquarters for recording and analysis.

(4) The unit OC must conduct an AAR of the unit's performance.

(5) Each element OC should conduct an AAR of his elements performance.

6-8. CONDUCTING THE AFTER ACTION REVIEW.

a. General. At the completion of each evaluation part, the AAR leader provides feedback to the unit in order to increase and reinforce learning.

b. Feedback. Because all members of the unit participate in an AAR, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer "data base' for key points. The AAR leader will draw information from each member, which becomes an important part of the discussion. This information is the basis for discussing alternate courses of action.

c. Preparing the AAR. AAR preparation involves five steps:

(1) Review training orders and objectives. Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The OC should be familiar with the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORDs so that he can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate elements that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

(2) Observe the exercise. This is an active process. The emphasis is on those actions that make the difference between the unit's success or failure. The OC does not need to remain close to the unit leader, since more can be seen from higher ground near the lead element's location or along the unit's route of march. Since unit orders identify important activities and checkpoints, the OC must be present when the commander issues the order. The OC should position himself where he can best observe anticipated critical events include.

(a) Conducting a road march.

(b) Crossing a radiological contaminated area.

(c) Performing unit supply operations.

(d) Responding to an NBC attack.

(3) Select the site and assemble the participants. After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where the majority of action occurred, where most of the critical events tool place (normally where the OPFOR was position), or where the terrain can be observed. Usually, the OPFOR or unit objectives are suitable for assembling the players and conducting the AAR.

(4) Debrief the OCs. While the units are moving to the selected site, the OCs should be debriefed. The senior OC must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. The fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise's event in the order in which they occurred.

(5) Review the events. After the senior OC has an understanding of what happened during the exercise, he reviews the events, which are ranked in terms of their relevance to the training objectives and contributions to the exercise outcome. He selects the events that can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

d. Conducting the AAR. Conducting the AAR requires the following five steps.

(1) Organize the participants. When the OC and AAR leader assembles the participants, he groups them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's OC is with the element for which he is responsible.

(2) State the training objectives. The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These are described as specifically as possible. He states any additional teaching points that he intends to cover during the AAR. These should be limited to three or four key points in order to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(3) Lead the discussion. The AAR leader guides the discussion of the events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and as the AAR proceeds, has the participants draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. In an effective AAR, the AAR leader should:

(a) Avoid giving a critique or lecture.

(b) Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.

(c) Suggest the players describe what occurred in their own terms.

(d) Suggest the players discuss not only what happen, but also how it happened and how it could be done better.

(e) Focus the discussion to ensure that important tactical lessons are made explicit.

(f) Relate events to subsequent results.

(g) Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.

(h) Encourage the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and how to show routes, phase line, and objectives.

(i) Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical actions.

(4) Review the sequence. The AAR leader reviews the events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise.

(a) Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents?

(b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?

(c) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?

(d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified and what was done to overcome it?

(e) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.

(5) Summarize key points. The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, he can have a private conversation with the unit commander regarding his strengths and weaknesses, and what he can do to improve his performance and that of his unit. A good AAR leader does the following.

(a) Maintain order and discipline.

(b) Reviews the training objectives.

(c) Addresses important events as they occurred and how the unit could have done them better. During the discussion, the leader avoids a detail examination of events not directly related to the training objective.

(d) Traces the chain of events so all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.

(e) Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.

(f) Involves participants in the discussion.

(g) Clearly and concisely gives summary and new training objectives.

(h) Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models.

e. Reference materials for conducting an AAR are TC 25-20 and FM 25-101.

APPENDIX A

COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY

A-1. PURPOSE. This appendix provides, as part of the CATS, the Combined Arms Command's recommended strategy for training a unit. This appendix has three parts. The first part describes CATS and explains how CATS fits into the training planning process as described in FM 25-101. The second part explains how to read the strategies. The third part explains how to integrate CATS into the long-range and near-term planning process.

Section I. CATS AND THE TRAINING PLANNING PROCESS

A-2. TRAINING PLANNING PROCESS. FM 25-101 describes a three-step process, based on the unit METL and ending in training execution. Figure A-1, page A-2, is a graphic representation of the process. CATS does not replace this process. It is a training tool that enhances the commander's ability to use the training planning process to manage his training and optimize the use of scarce training resources. CATS unit strategies describe recommended training events and the event frequency. Units may train all or some of these events. A unit’s training frequency may or may not match that in the CATS strategy. Whatever a unit’s training requirements, CATS provides a framework for use in making decisions on the training to be conducted. The training strategy outlined in CATS is designed to help commanders at all levels develop and execute a more efficient training program. Any given strategy addresses all units Army-wide of the same TOE. The specific makeup of the unit's training program is dependent upon its METL, guidance from higher headquarters, and the resources available at the installation or training environment. CATS unit strategies are descriptive in nature and intended for use as a guide for commanders.

A-3. CATS. CATS is the Army's training strategy that integrates combined arms training for heavy, light, and special operations forces, the active and reserve components, in the unit, and institution environments. It provides an azimuth to guide Army training and identifies the resources required to support that training. It enables the Army to identify, manage, and program the acquisition of training resources. CATS evolved from the need for more efficient training based on expected resource constraints. At the US Army level, CATS gives the rationale for acquiring training resources through the development of unit and institutional training strategies. The strategies provide recommended training frequencies and identify the training resources needed to support the strategy.

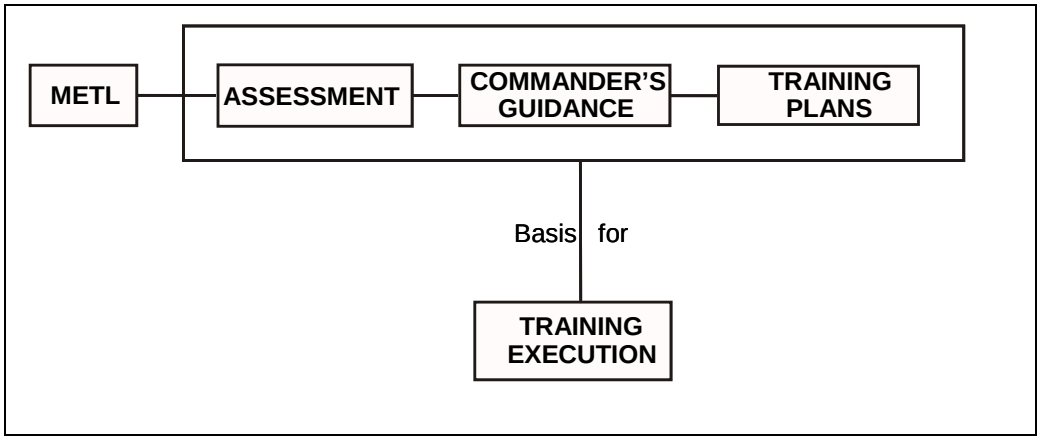


Figure A-1. Training Planning Process

A-4. TERMS. The information in this paragraph explains the terms listed in Figure A-1. For information on the training planning process, see FM 25-101.

a. The METL is an unconstrained, unprioritized statement of the tasks required to complete the wartime mission. It is the source of training planning activities.

b. Assessment is the beginning of the training planning process. It is the commander's evaluation of the unit's training level based on the METL.

c. Commander's Guidance consists of long-range planning calendars and CTG issued to the battalion from the division. It serves to focus the training efforts of the battalion in accordance with the division commander's priorities. The battalion in turn issues CTG for its subordinate companies.

d. Training Plans are a collection of schedules and other supporting documents which carry out the commander's guidance.

e. Training Execution is the actual performance of the training scheduled in the training plans portion of the training planning process.

A-5. APPLYING CATS. The information in this paragraph explains how to apply CATS to the training planning process. Figure A-2 is a graphic representation of the process.

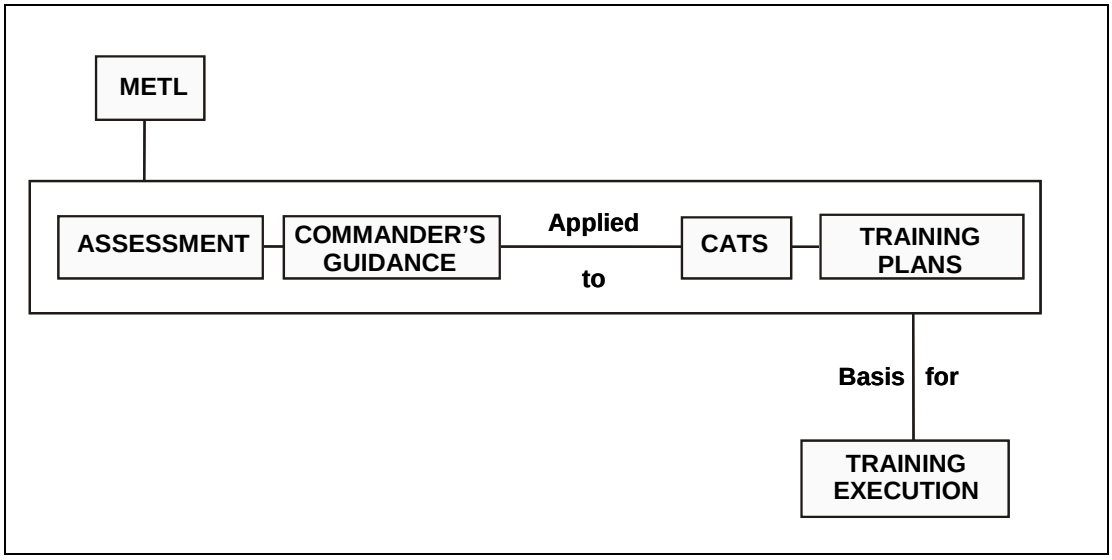


Figure A-2. Training Planning Process

a. The commander determines the exact events and tasks to be trained based on his METL and guidance from higher headquarters.

(1) The unit trains tasks during events established in FM 25-100, FM 25-101, and CATS.

(2) The unit trains its METL by training soldiers, and their appropriate sections, in their wartime tasks. The unit applies CATS to its training plans by applying the training events, frequencies, and critical gates contained in strategies to the CTG in developing training plans. The commander and training officer/NCO uses the critical gates identified in the strategies to ensure basic tasks are trained prior to moving on to training more complex or resource intensive tasks. The performance of training gate tasks is always evaluated by the commander and serves as the basis of additional training efforts. For example, a TEWT should be used to train METL tasks prior to conducting a complex and resource intensive event like a CFX.

(3) TADSS-based training uses a mix of TADSS and live fire/field training. The strategies show those TADSS within the Army's system or year projected for fielding. The TADSS may not be available at the installation or training environment.

b. The strategies can be viewed as training plans for generic type units. By inserting extra steps into the training process, commanders evaluate and apply the components of their CATS strategies to their particular training programs and environments. The optimal frequencies identified in the strategies may have to be adjusted depending upon the unit's training status or its resorting.

Section II. STRATEGY ORGANIZATION AND INTERPRETATION

A-6. UNIT TRAINING STRATEGIES. This paragraph explains the strategy organization and explains how to use it. The unit training portion of CATS is a series of separately generated training strategies. These strategies describe the events, frequencies, and resources recommended to train to standard. As part of the unit training strategy development process, TRADOC established a standard format to depict unit training strategies. The unit training strategy is a descriptive strategy for training and sustaining soldier and collective task proficiency. The tasks to be trained at a particular unit will be based on the unit's METL. The unit strategy in this appendix covers all CSS units. The unit training strategies have three major components -- Maneuver, Gunnery, and Soldier.

a. The Maneuver strategy is descriptive. It provides recommended training frequencies for collective training events in a unit. The events come from FM 25-100, FM 25-101, or the glossary of this MTP. The Maneuver strategy helps a unit maintain MTP standards and depicts the resources required to support training events.

b. The Gunnery Component has individual/crew served weapons strategies that the Infantry school developed. These strategies can also be found in DA Pamphlet 350-38 and DA Pamphlet 350-39, or appropriate weapons FMs.

c. The Soldier Component is a descriptive strategy for training individual soldier skills. It lists the resources required to support soldier training, and links with and supports a collective training strategy.

A-7. ELEMENTS OF THE UNIT STRATEGIES. The unit training strategies are in matrix formats. The matrix lists the unit size levels, training events or training exercises, training event frequencies for both active and reserve components, critical gates, and training resources.

a. Training levels are units, training elements, or echelons (such as individual through corps) that execute specific training events.

b. Training events are types of collective training exercises identified in FM 25-101 or the glossary of this MTP. Training events identify the recommended exercises units should conduct to train to MTP standard. Units normally conduct events in a progressive and sequential manner. For example, a TEWT should be conducted before conducting a CFX. A CPX should be conducted before conducting an FTX.

c. Training event frequencies are the suggested number of times that an event should be trained during a training cycle to attain or maintain MTP standards. AC units use an annual cycle. RC unit's conduct training on a 4-year cycle.

d. A critical gate is a training event that must be completed and evaluated before moving onto a more complex, resource intensive or hazardous event. MACOM or field commanders may direct performance of critical gate training tasks to an established standard prior to performing more complex or resource intensive tasks.

e. The unit training strategies identify the resources that will be used to support each training event. These resources are:

- OPTEMPO.
- Ammunition.
- TADSS.
- Training Land.
- Training Ranges.

The resources listed in the strategies represent those that are available now.

(1) OPTEMPO figures reflect the annual operating miles/hours for the base vehicle for a particular unit, per event. The OPTEMPO figures come from the BLTM. When no BLTM was available, the proponents developed an estimated OPTEMPO required to support all the annual iterations of that training event.

(2) Ammunition figures reflect the ammunition required to support training events as prescribed in DA Pam 350-38. The maneuver/collective strategies reflect blank ammunition requirements. Live ammunition appears on the Gunnery strategies. Pyrotechnics appear on the maneuver/collective component.

(3) TADSS are training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations that support specific training events. TADSS listed are those in the system and non-system TADSS that are fielded. For example, Battalion and BBS is identified as a primary TADSS to support battalion staff and headquarters company/detachment's CPX training.

(4) Training Land is a resource category that will list the recommended training land in kilometers by event to conduct maneuver training. The reference is TC 25-1. A particular unit will determine the actual amount of training land needed by METT-TC and the characteristics or condition of the training land available to the unit.

(5) Training Range is a resource requirement that supports weapons training events. The information comes from TC 25-8.

A-8. GUIDE TO THE UNIT STRATEGIES. This paragraph provides a guide to reading the collective, gunnery, and soldier components. Generally, the leader using the matrices for planning will have a METL (or other list of critical tasks in which his unit must be proficient) and will be looking for guidance about appropriate training methods. The key to using CATS for unit training management is understanding the strategy and its various components. The strategy is organized by functional area and echelon to be trained. It has eight interactive components, expressed as columns in a matrix format. An example matrix for one mission/task is at Table A-1, page A-7. The columns provide the following information:

- Column One records the mission and supporting tasks requiring training. The entries in Column One consist of the appropriate MTP missions and tasks.

- Column Two shows the desired frequency of and interval between repetitions of the task(s). Both the unit’s personnel turnover rate and the rate of progress need to be considered in determining how frequently to train.

- Column Three lists alternative "training means"--combinations of events and media (live or simulation)--that might be selected to train this mission/task. Commanders must select an appropriate means for each training event conducted.

- Column Four lists the estimated duration of each means (determined by the event more than by the medium). Commanders need to ensure adequate time is available for each task.

- Column Five shows a means quality rating, related to the cost and realism of the event/medium. When choosing events and media, the resource costs of different training media must be balanced against the needs for realism and repetition. Generally, as the unit becomes more proficient, realism should increase.

    - An "A" level means is identified as a CTC deployment and training activity.

    - A "B" level means is described as a well assigned home station training exercise.

    - A "C" level means is described as a partial task training exercise.

    - A "D" level means is described as a subtask training exercise.

- Column Six identifies the training unit/audience for the event. The information in this column is drawn from the appropriate MTP.

- Column Seven gives the prerequisite training (training "gates") that should be attained by the members of the training audience prior to the execution of the means in Column 3. If the training audience has not attained the specified level of proficiency, the means cannot achieve the quality indicated in Column 5.

- Column Eight provides a place to record detailed comments concerning the purpose and desired outcome of each event along with other remarks or guidance.

Table A-1. Example CATS Task Matrix

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4	Column 5	Column 6	Column 7	Column 8
Task	Freq/Interval	Means (Event/Media)	Estimated Duration	Quality (A-D)	Training Unit (Audience)	Prerequisite Training Gates	Remarks: Includes purpose of event; outcome being supported; and comments about execution of the event/ constraints posed by TADSS.
RECALL PROCEDURES XX-X-XXXX To train company on recall procedures: Perform Deployment Alert Activities 63-1-4850	12/Monthly	7 STX (Telephonic/ Non-telephonic Alert)	2-3 hrs	C	Battalion	Telephonic and non-telephonic recall procedures and rosters current	PURPOSE: To verify recall rosters and procedures. OUTCOME: To maintain the ability to rapidly alert, assemble, prepare, deploy, marshal, and outload on any mode of transportation, all TOE equipment and personnel with minimum outside assistance. REMARKS: None.

Section III. INTEGRATION OF CATS IN THE PLANNING PROCESS

A-9. INTEGRATING CATS. This portion of the appendix explains how to integrate CATS into the planning process. It focuses on long range planning conducted at brigade and above. To understand how CATS fits into this process, a brief summary of Chapter 3, (Planning) from FM 25-101 is provided.

A-10. THE PLANNING PROCESS.

a. Long-Range Planning.

(1) Assessment. Assessment is the start of the long range planning process. Using their evaluations, the input of subordinate leaders, and the results of training evaluations, commanders assess their unit's training level on METL tasks. The assessment serves as the basis for the commander's training strategy for sustainment and improvement training. Commanders at all levels do this assessment function. An integral part of the assessment is the identification of required training resources and shortfalls. The commander also must synchronize the actions of supporting units and agencies to ensure proper training execution.

(2) In creating their training strategy, commanders ensure training:

- Is METL focused.
- Incorporates combined arms.
- Identifies who, when, and where to train.
- Has a logical sequence of execution.
- Identifies the type of exercise to be trained.
- Determines the frequencies of a given task.
- Coordinates all events.
- Matches resources to requirements.

The strategy that meets these requirements results in the commander's training guidance.

(3) Senior commanders (brigade and above) provide subordinate commanders with long range training calendars, the commander's training guidance, resources to train, and protection from training distorters. Commanders often provide recommended training events frequency.

b. Short-Range Planning. The short range planning process refines the guidance that results from the long range planning process. Subordinate commanders use this guidance to create their training calendars. Guidance on the short-range training process can be found in the CATS appendix in the unit's MTP.

A-11. CATS AND THE PLANNING PROCESS. CATS serves the unit commander as a training management and training resource identification tool. As a training management tool, it allows the unit commander to more efficiently manage his training program, with limited resource availability. As a training resource identification tool, it identifies the resources within the Army's inventory to conduct training. The availability of those resources will vary, depending on location.

a. Long-Range Planning.

(1) Assessment.

(2) The CATS strategy:

- Is METL focused.
- Incorporates combined arms.
- Identifies who, when, and where to train.
- Has a logical sequence of execution.
- Identifies the type of exercise to be trained.
- Determines the frequencies of a given task.
- Coordinates all events.
- Matches resources to requirements.

(3) CATS provides a convenient vehicle for the transmission of the commander's training guidance. It serves as the basis for the long-range calendar and provides subordinate commanders with recommended frequencies of training events.

(4) Execution. The following example shows how CATS could fit into the long range planning process.

b. The Company/Detachment Maneuver Training Strategy lists the recommended frequencies for required annual training events. In particular, for the STX it lists 10 iterations. The optimal training frequency is for the company/detachment staff to train the event 10 times in a given year, 1 STX per month for 10 months. The frequencies listed in CATS would be trained as follows:

- 2 events per year - semi-annual training
- 4 events per year - quarterly training
- 6 events per year - bimonthly training

c. Naturally, the training year may not support such a neat breakdown of training events. CATS provides the flexibility to adjust the events to meet each unit’s specific requirements. A key point here is the idea of critical gates. As one can see, STX is a critical gate for FTX. Every task that is a critical gate should be conducted before conducting the more complex task. Gates serve to ensure basic tasks essential to the successful performance of complex tasks are trained and evaluated prior to the performance of complex tasks. Critical gates may also serve as a type of preview or "rehearsal" for a follow-on training event.

d. Assume the commander has identified platoon leadership as a particular weakness in the unit. The commander decides he wants to run platoon STX exercises twice a month to train the platoon/section/crew/squad leadership elements.

e. Using this guidance, simply go to the company strategy and substitute 24 for 12. If the frequencies for the other events are acceptable, the unit now has a coupled commander's strategy. In this manner a CATS base strategy is tailored to meet a commander's assessment and training needs.

f. Short Range Planning. The application of CATS Battalion Staff and Headquarters Company/Detachment's unit training strategies to battalion short range planning and the battalion quarterly training calendar is seen as follows:

Recommended Company/Detachment Calendar Using CATS Maneuver Strategy.

1st Month

Week 1 - Drill Training (1)
Week 2 - Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 3 - Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 4 - STX (2)

NOTES:

1. The collective tasks trained during the weekly Cell/Staff/Section training periods support company METL tasks and are trained according to the commander's assessment and his priorities outlined in the CTG. Soldier training tasks trained during this month are soldier/leader supporting performance of the collective tasks to be trained during the weekly staff training sessions or the monthly STX.

2. Performance of the STX substitutes for Cell/Staff/Section Training in week four (4).

2nd Month

Week 1 - Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 2 - Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 3 - TOCEX (2)
Week 4 - Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)

Notes:

1. Training during these weekly periods concentrates on staff METL tasks identified as priority in the CTG. Training time here could also be spent training tasks evaluated as NO GO during the 1st month's training periods. LCXs and MCXs can also be used to enhance staff coordination.

2. Performance of the TOCEX substitutes for performance of the monthly STAFFEX. Commanders may have to modify or extend the training period of the TOCEX to include training tasks that would have been normally performed in the STAFFEX.

3. Tasks trained here can be tasks rated as NO GO during the previous week's TOCEX.

3rd Month

Week 1 - Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 2 - TEWT (1)
Week 3 - Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 4 - CPX (2)

Notes:

1. This TEWT substitutes for performance of the Call/Staff/Section training that would normally be performed this week. Ideally, the TEWT's discussion points and learning objectives would be developed to support/reinforce collective tasks trained in the previous month's Cell/Staff/Section, STAFFEX, or TOCEX training periods. The commander may also structure the TEWT to train staff coordination and integration tasks as key for the upcoming CPX.

2. Substitutes for performance of the STAFFEX normally performed during the month.

As seen in the above, the commander structures his training program using recommended CATS training events, frequencies, and critical gates to support METL training. Weekly or monthly training events can be conducted independently or integrated into other collective training exercises. In scheduling training, the commander should take maximum advantage of higher headquarters directed events to accomplish recommended CATS training events.

g. Horizontal and Vertical Integration. In executing this training strategy, the commander vertically integrates his training requirements with the battalion's/group's training requirements. The company's training strategy is also horizontally integrated with other companies in the battalion to ensure combined arms training is effected.

APPENDIX B

ARMY UNIVERSAL TASK LIST

B-1. DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER. The deploy/conduct maneuver task area is the movement of combat forces to achieve a position of advantage with respect to enemy forces. This task area includes the employment of forces on the battlefield in combination with direct fire or fire potential. Indirect fires are included under the "Employ Fires" task area. It also includes the conduct of tactical movement of all types of units, mobility operations, counter-mobility operations, and tactical actions associated with force protection.

B-2. DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE. The develop intelligence task area is the activity to generate knowledge of and products portraying the enemy and environment features required by a commander in planning and conducting operations. It is derived from an analysis of information on the enemy's capabilities, intentions, vulnerabilities, and the environment. This includes the development of tactical intelligence requirements, the planning of collection activities, the collection of relevant information, the processing of that information to include the development of targeting information, and the preparation and dissemination of intelligence.

B-3. EMPLOY FIRES. The employ fires task area encompasses the collective and coordinated use of target-acquisition data, indirect-fire weapons, fixed-wing aircraft, offensive information operations, and other lethal and non-lethal means against targets located throughout an area of operations. The essential features of the employ fires task area are the acquiring and processing of tactical targets and the employment of fire support. Note: The acquisition and attack of aerial targets are addressed in "Protect the Force" task area.

B-4. PERFORM CSS (COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT) AND SUSTAINMENT. The perform CSS and sustainment task area is the support and service provided to sustain forces in an area of operations during war and during stability operations and support operations. This tactical task area involves the provision of supply, maintenance, transportation, CHS, personnel, legal, finance, religious, public affairs, contracting, distribution management, and field and other service support (such as general engineering support) required to sustain an operating force in an area of operations that may be joint, multinational, interagency, or a combination of these forces. Combat service support may be required to support contractors, civilians (such as refugees and disaster victims), or members of other governmental and non-governmental agencies. It includes civil-military operations.

B-5. EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL. The exercise C2 task area is the exercise and direction by a properly designated commander over assigned and available forces in the accomplishment of the mission. C2 tasks are performed through an arrangement of personnel, information management, procedures, and equipment and facilities employed by a commander in planning, preparing for, executing, and assessing the conduct of operations to accomplish the mission. It includes the acquisition and management of information, the maintenance of situational understanding, the conduct of situational estimates to determine actions, applying risk management, and the direction and leading of subordinate forces.

B-6. PROTECT THE FORCE. The protect the force task area is the protection of the tactical force's fighting potential so it can be applied at the appropriate time and place. It includes those measures the force takes to remain viable and functional by protecting itself from the effects of (or recovery from) enemy activities. Those active and passive measures encompass the following:

a. Conduct air/missile defense.

b. Protect against enemy hazards within the AO.

c. Conduct local security operations.

d. Conduct defensive information operations.

APPENDIX C

Geneva Conventions

THE EFFECTS OF THE LAWS OF LAND WARFARE ON COMBAT HEALTH SUPPORT

C-1. The Law of War.

a. The conduct of armed hostilities on land is regulated by the law of land warfare (See DA Pam 27-1 and FM 27-10). This body of law is inspired by the desire to diminish the evils of war by--

(1) Protecting both combatants and noncombatants from unnecessary suffering.

(2) Safeguarding certain fundamental human rights of persons who fall into the hands of the enemy, particularly prisoners of war, the wounded and sick, and civilians.

(3) Facilitating the restoration of peace.

b. The law of war places limits on the exercise of a belligerent's power in the interest of furthering that desire (diminishing the evils of war), and it requires that belligerents--

(1) Refrain from employing any kind or degree of violence which is not actually necessary for military purposes.

(2) Conduct hostilities with regard for the principles of humanity and chivalry.

C-2. Sources of the Law of War.

a. The law of war is derived from two principal sources.

(1) Treaties (or conventions) such as The Hague and Geneva Conventions.

(2) Custom--practices which by common consent and long-established uniform adherence has taken on the force of law.

b. Under the Constitution of the U.S., treaties constitute part of the "supreme Law of the Land," and thus must be observed by both military and civilian personnel. The unwritten or customary law of war is also part of the law of the U.S. It is binding upon the U.S., citizens of the U.S., and other persons serving this country.

C-3. The Geneva Conventions. The U.S. is a Party to numerous conventions and treaties pertinent to warfare on land. Collectively, these treaties are often referred to as The Hague and Geneva Conventions. Whereas The Hague Conventions concern the methods and means of warfare, The Geneva Conventions concern the victims of war or armed conflict. The Geneva Conventions are four separate international treaties, signed in 1949, and are respectively entitled:

a. "Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field" (GWS).

b. "Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick, and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea" (GWS Sea).

c. "Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War" (GPW).

d. "Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War" (GC).

The Conventions are very detailed and contain many provisions, which are tied directly to the unit and CHS missions.

C-4. Protection of the Sick and Wounded. The essential and dominant idea of the GWS is that the soldier who has been wounded or who is sick, and for that reason is out of the combat in a disabled condition, is from that moment protected. Friend or foe must be tended with the same care. From this principle, numerous obligations are imposed upon Parties to a conflict.

a. Protection and Care. Article 12 of the GWS imposes several specific obligations regarding the protection and care of the wounded and sick.

(1) The first paragraph of Article 12, GWS, states "Members of the armed forces and other persons mentioned in the following Article, who are wounded or sick, shall be respected and protected in all circumstances."

(a) The word "respect" means "to spare, not to attack," and "protect" means "to come to someone's defense, to lend help and support." These words make it unlawful to attack, kill, ill-treat, or in any way harm a fallen and unarmed enemy soldier. At the same time, these words impose an obligation to come to his aid and give him such care, as his condition requires.

(b) This obligation is applicable "in all circumstances." The wounded and sick are to be respected just as much when they are with their own army or in no man's land as when they have fallen into the hands of the enemy.

(c) Combatants as well as noncombatants are required to respect the wounded. The obligation also applies to civilians, in regard to whom Article 18 specifically states: "The civilian population shall respect these wounded and sick, and in particular abstain from offering them violence."

(d) The GWS does not define what is meant by "wounded or sick," nor has there ever been any definition of the degree of severity of a wound or a sickness entitling the wounded or sick combatant to respect. Any definition would necessarily be restrictive in character and would thereby open the door to misinterpretation and abuse. The meaning of the words "wounded and sick" is thus a matter of common sense and good faith. It is the act of falling or laying down of arms because of a wound or sickness, which constitutes the claim to protection. Only the soldier who is himself seeking to kill may be killed.

(e) The benefits afforded the wounded and sick extend not only to members of the armed forces, but to other categories of persons as well, classes of whom are specified in Article 13, GWS. Even though a wounded person is not in one of the categories enumerated in the Article, we still must respect and protect that person. There is a universal principle, which says that any wounded or sick person is entitled to respect and humane treatment

and the care, which his condition requires. Wounded and sick civilians have the benefit of the safeguards of the GC.

(2) The second paragraph of Article 12, GWS, provides that the wounded and sick "...shall be treated humanely and cared for by the Party to the conflict in whose power they may be, without any adverse distinction found on sex, race, nationality, religion, political opinions, or other similar criteria..."

(a) All adverse distinctions are prohibited. Nothing can justify a belligerent in making any adverse distinction between wounded or sick who require his attention, whether they be friend or foe. Both are on equal footing in the matter of their claims to protection, respect, and care. The foregoing is not intended to prohibit concessions, particularly with respect to food, clothing, and shelter, which take into account the different national habits and backgrounds of the wounded and sick.

(b) The wounded and sick shall not be made the subjects of biological, scientific, or medical experiments of any kind which are not justified on medical grounds and dictated by a desire to improve their condition.

(c) The wounded and sick shall not willfully be left without medical assistance, nor shall conditions exposing them to contagion or infection be created.

(3) The only reasons, which can justify priority in the order of treatment, are reasons of medical urgency. This is the only justified exception to the principle of equality of treatment of the wounded.

(4) Paragraph 5 of Article 12, GWS, provides that if we must abandon wounded or sick, we have a moral obligation to, "as far as military considerations permit," leave medical supplies and personnel to assist in their care. This provision is in no way bound up with the absolute obligation imposed by paragraph 2 to care for the wounded. A belligerent can never refuse to care for enemy wounded on the pretext that his adversary has abandoned them without medical personnel and equipment.

b. Enemy Wounded and Sick. The protections accorded the wounded and sick apply to friend and foe alike without distinction. Certain provisions of the GWS; however, specifically concern enemy wounded and sick. There are also provisions in the GPW which, because they apply to prisoners of war generally, also apply to enemy wounded or sick.

(1) Article 14 of the GWS states that persons who are wounded and then captured have the status of prisoners of war. However, that wounded soldier is also a person who needs treatment. Therefore, a wounded soldier who falls into the hands of an enemy who is a Party to the GWS and the GPW, such as the U.S., will enjoy protection under both Conventions until his recovery. The GWS will take precedence over the GPW where the two overlap.

(2) Article 16 of the GWS requires the recording and forwarding of information regarding enemy wounded, sick, or dead (See AR 190-8 for disposition of an EPW after hospital care).

(3) When intelligence indicates that large numbers of EPW may result from an operation, medical units may require reinforcement to support the anticipated additional EPW

patient work load. Procedures for estimating the medical work load involved in the treatment and care of EPW patients are described in FM 8-55.

c. Search for and Collection of Casualties. Article 15 of the GWS imposes a duty on combatants to search for and collect the dead and wounded and sick as soon as circumstances permit. It is left to the tactical commander to judge what is possible, and to decide to commit his medical personnel to this effort. If circumstances permit, an armistice or suspension of fire should be arranged to permit this effort.

d. Assistance of the Civilian Population. Article 18, GWS addresses the civilian population. It allows a belligerent to ask the civilians to collect and care for wounded or sick of whatever nationality. This provision does not relieve the military authorities of their responsibility to give both physical and moral care to the wounded and sick. The GWS also reminds the civilian population that they must respect the wounded and sick, and in particular must not injure them.

e. Enemy Civilian Wounded and Sick. Certain provisions of the GC are relevant to the unit and CHS missions.

(1) Article 16 of the GC provides that enemy civilians who are "wounded and sick, as well as the infirm, and expectant mothers, shall be the object of particular protection and respect." The Article also requires that, "as far as military considerations allow, each Party to the conflict shall facilitate the steps taken to search for the killed and wounded [civilians], to assist...other persons exposed to grave danger, and to protect them against pillage and ill-treatment [emphasis added]."

(a) The "protection and respect" to which wounded and sick enemy civilians are entitled is the same as that accorded to wounded and sick enemy military personnel.

(b) While Article 15 of the GWS requires Parties to a conflict to search for and collect the dead and wounded and sick members of the armed forces, Article 16 of the GC states that the Parties must "facilitate the steps taken" in regard to civilians. This recognizes the fact that saving civilians is the responsibility of the civilian authorities rather than of the military. The military is not required to provide injured civilians with medical care in a CZ. However, if we start providing treatment we are bound by the provisions of the GWS. Provisions for treating civilians (enemy or friendly) will be addressed in COMMZ regulations.

(2) In occupied territories, the Occupying Power must accord the inhabitants numerous protections as required by the GC. The provisions relevant to medical care include--

(a) Requirement to bring in medical supplies for the population if the resources of the occupied territory are inadequate.

(b) Prohibition on requisitioning medical supplies unless the requirements of the civilian population have been taken into account.

(c) Duty of ensuring and maintaining, with the cooperation of national and local authorities, the medical and hospital establishments and services, public health, and hygiene in the occupied territory.

(d) Requirement that medical personnel of all categories be allowed to carry out their duties.

(e) Prohibition on requisitioning civilian hospitals on other than a temporary basis and then only in cases of urgent necessity for the care of military wounded and sick and after suitable arrangements have been made for the civilian patients.

(f) Requirement to provide adequate medical treatment to detained persons.

(g) Requirement to provide adequate medical care in internment camps.

C-5. Protection and Identification of Medical Personnel. Article 24 of the GWS provides special protection for "Medical personnel exclusively engaged in the search for, or the collection, transport, or treatment of the wounded or sick, or in the prevention of disease, [and] staff exclusively engaged in the administration of medical units and establishments...[emphasis added]." Article 25 provides limited protection for "Members of the armed forces specially trained for employment, should the need arise, as hospital orderlies, nurses, or auxiliary stretcher-bearers, in the search for or the collection, transport, or treatment of the wounded and sick, if they are carrying out those duties at the time when they come into contact with the enemy or fall into his hands [emphasis added]."

a. Protection. There are two separate and distinct forms of protection.

(1) The first is protection from intentional attack if medical personnel are identifiable as such by an enemy in a combat environment. Normally this is facilitated by medical personnel wearing an arm band bearing the Distinctive Emblem (a red cross or red crescent, on a white background), or by their employment in a medical unit, establishment, or vehicle (including medical aircraft and hospital ships) that displays the Distinctive Emblem. Persons protected by Article 25 may wear an arm band bearing a miniature Distinctive Emblem only while executing medical duties.

(2) The second protection provided by the GWS pertains to medical personnel who fall into the hands of the enemy. Article 24 personnel are entitled to "retained person" status. They are not deemed to be prisoners of war, but otherwise benefit from the protections of the GPW. They are authorized to carry out medical duties only, and "shall be retained only in so far as the state of health...and the number of prisoners of war require." Article 25 personnel are prisoners of war, but shall be employed on their medical duties in so far as the need arises. They may be required to perform other duties or labor, and they may be held until a general repatriation of prisoners of war is accomplished upon the cessation of hostilities.

b. Specific Cases. The AMEDD personnel and non-AMEDD personnel assigned to medical units fall into the category identified in Article 24 provided they meet the "exclusively engaged" criteria of that article. The U.S. Army does not have any personnel who officially fall into the category identified in Article 25. While it is not a violation of the GWS for Article 24 personnel to perform nonmedical duties, it should be understood; however, that Article 24 personnel lose their protected status under that article if they perform duties or tasks inconsistent with their noncombatant role. Should those personnel later take up their medical duties again, a reasonable argument might be made that they cannot regain Article 24 status since they have not been exclusively engaged in medical duties and that such switching of roles might at best cause such personnel to fall under the category identified in Article 25.

(1) While only Article 25 refers to nurses, nurses are Article 24 personnel if they meet the "exclusively engaged" criteria of that article.

(2) The AMEDD officers and NCOs assigned to nonmedical positions in an FSB, MSB, or DISCOM are neither Article 24 nor Article 25 personnel. Such assignments place them in the role of a combatant. Examples of such personnel are--

(a) The AMEDD officers serving as commanders of FSBs or MSBs with responsibility for base or base cluster defense as well as command and control of medical and nonmedical units.

(b) The AMEDD officers and NCOs assigned to nonmedical staff positions with an FSB or MSB with responsibility for planning and supervising the logistics support for a combat maneuver brigade or other combat unit.

(3) Article 24 personnel who might become Article 25 personnel by virtue of their switching roles could include the following:

(a) A medical company commander, a physician, or the executive officer, an MSC officer, detailed as convoy march unit commander with responsibility for medical and nonmedical unit routes of march, convoy control, defense, and repulsing attacks.

(b) Helicopter pilots who are permanently assigned to a dedicated medical aviation unit to fly medical evacuation helicopters, but fly helicopters not bearing the red cross emblems on standard combat missions during other times.

(4) The GWS does not itself prohibit the use of Article 24 personnel in perimeter defense of nonmedical units such as unit trains logistics areas or base clusters under overall security defense plans, but the policy of the U.S. Army is that Article 24 personnel will not be used for this purpose. Adherence to this policy should avoid any issues regarding their status under the GWS due to a temporary change in their role from noncombatant to combatant. Medical personnel may guard their own unit without any concurrent loss of their protected status.

c. Identification Cards and Arm Bands. Medical personnel who meet the "exclusively engaged" criteria of Article 24, GWS, are entitled to wear an arm band bearing the Distinctive Emblem of the red cross and carry the medical personnel identification card authorized in Article 40, GWS (in the U.S. armed services, DD Form 1934). Article 25 personnel and medical personnel serving in positions that do not meet the "exclusively engaged" criteria of Article 24 are not entitled to carry the medical personnel identification card or wear the Distinctive Emblem arm band. Such personnel carry a standard military identification card (DD Form 2A) and, under Article 25, may wear an arm band bearing a miniature Distinctive Emblem when executing medical duties. (For a discussion of ID cards, see AR 600-8-14.)

C-6. Protection and Identification of Medical Units and Establishments, Buildings and Materiel, and Medical Transports.

a. Protection. There are two separate and distinct forms of protection.

(1) The first is protection from intentional attack if medical units, establishments, or transports are identifiable as such by an enemy in a combat environment. Normally, this is

facilitated by medical units or establishments flying a white flag with a red cross and by marking buildings and transport vehicles with the red cross emblem.

(a) It follows that if we cannot attack recognizable medical units, establishments, or transports, we should allow them to continue to give treatment to the wounded in their care as long as this is necessary.

(b) All vehicles employed exclusively on medical transport duty are protected on the field of battle. Medical vehicles being used for both military and medical purposes, such as moving wounded personnel during an evacuation and carrying retreating belligerents as well, are not entitled to protection.

(c) Medical aircraft, like medical transports, are protected from intentional attack, but with a major difference: they are protected only "while flying at heights, times, and on routes specifically agreed upon between the belligerents concerned." Article 36, GWS. Such agreements may be made for each specific case or may be of a general nature, concluded for the duration of hostilities. If there is no agreement, belligerents use medical aircraft at their own risk and peril.

(d) The second paragraph of Article 19 imposes an obligation upon belligerents to "ensure that the said medical establishments and units are, as far as possible, situated in such a manner that attacks against military objectives cannot imperil their safety." Hospitals should be sited alone, as far as possible from military objectives. The unintentional bombardment of a medical establishment or unit due to its presence among or in proximity to valid military objectives is not a violation of the GWS. Legal protection is certainly valuable, but it is more valuable still when accompanied by practical safeguards.

(2) The second protection provided by the GWS pertains to medical units, establishments, materiel, and transports which fall into the hands of the enemy.

(a) Captured mobile medical unit materiel is to be used first to treat the patients in the captured unit. If there are no patients in the captured unit, or when those who were there have been moved, the materiel is to be used for the treatment of other wounded and sick persons. (See Chapter 6 for additional information on captured enemy equipment.)

(b) Generally, the buildings, materiel, and stores of fixed medical establishments will continue to be used to treat wounded and sick. However, after provision is made to care for remaining patients, tactical commanders may make other use of them. All distinctive markings must be removed if the buildings are to be used for other than medical purposes.

(c) The materiel and stores of fixed establishments and mobile medical units are not to be intentionally destroyed, even to prevent them from falling into enemy hands. The actual buildings may in certain extreme cases have to be destroyed for tactical reasons.

(d) Medical transports which fall into enemy hands may be used for any purpose once arrangements have been made for the medical care of the wounded and sick they contain. The distinctive markings must be removed if they are to be used for nonmedical purposes.

(e) A medical aircraft is supposed to obey a summons to land for inspection. If it is performing its medical mission, it is supposed to be released to continue its

flight. If examination reveals that an act "harmful to the enemy" (that is if the aircraft is carrying munitions, for example) has been committed, it loses the protections of the Convention and may be seized. If a medical aircraft makes an involuntary landing, all aboard, except the medical personnel, will be prisoners of war. A medical aircraft refusing a summons to land is a fair target.

b. Identification. The GWS contains several provisions regarding the use of the red cross emblem on medical units, establishments, and transports (the identification of medical personnel has been previously discussed).

(1) Article 39 of the GWS reads as follows: "Under the direction of the competent military authority, the emblem shall be displayed on the flags, armlets, and on all equipment employed in the Medical Service."

(a) There is no obligation on a belligerent to mark his units with the emblem. Sometimes a commander (generally no lower than a brigade commander for U.S. forces) may order the camouflage of his medical units in order to conceal the presence or real strength of his forces. The enemy must respect a medical unit if he knows of its presence, even one, which is camouflaged or not marked. The absence of a visible red cross emblem; however, coupled with a lack of knowledge on the part of the enemy as to the unit's protected status, may render that unit's protection valueless.

(b) The distinctive emblem is not a red cross alone; it is a red cross on a white background. Should there be some good reason; however, why an object protected by the Convention can only be marked with a red cross without a white background, belligerents may not make the fact that it is so marked a pretext for refusing to respect it.

(c) Some countries use the red crescent on a white background in place of the red cross. This emblem is recognized as an authorized exception under Article 38, GWS. Although not specifically authorized as a symbol in lieu of the red cross, enemies of Israel in past wars have recognized the red Star of David and have afforded it the same respect as the red cross. This showed compliance with the general rule that the wounded and sick must be respected and protected when they are recognized as such, even when not properly marked.

(d) The initial phrase of Article 39 shows that it is the military commander who controls the emblem and can give or withhold permission to use it. He is at all times responsible for the use made of the emblem and must see that it is not improperly used by the troops or by individuals.

(2) Article 42 of the GWS specifically addresses the marking of medical units and establishments.

(a) "The distinctive flag of the Convention shall be hoisted only over such medical units and establishments as are entitled to be respected under the Convention, and only with the consent of the military authorities." Paragraph 1, Article 42, GWS. Although the Convention does not define "the distinctive flag of the Conventions," what is meant is a white flag with a red cross in its center. Also, the word "flag" must be taken in its broadest sense. Hospitals are often marked by one or several red cross emblems painted on the roof. Finally, the military authority must consent to the use of the flag (see the above comments on Article 39) and must ensure that the flag is used only on buildings entitled to protection.

(b) "In mobile units, as in fixed establishments, [the distinctive flag] may be accompanied by the national flag of the Party to the conflict to which the unit or establishment belongs." Paragraph 2, Article 42, GWS. This provision makes it optional to fly the national flag with the red cross flag. It should be noted that on a battlefield, the national flag is a symbol of belligerency and is therefore likely to provoke attack.

(3) In a NATO conflict, camouflage of the Geneva emblem is provided on medical facilities where the lack of camouflage might compromise tactical operations. Medical facilities on land, supporting forces of other nations, will display or camouflage the Geneva emblem in accordance with national regulations and procedures. When failure to camouflage would endanger or compromise tactical operations, the camouflage of medical facilities may be ordered by a NATO commander of at least brigade level or equivalent. Such an order is to be temporary and local in nature and countermanded as soon as the circumstances permit. It is not envisaged that fixed, large, medical facilities would be camouflaged. The Standardization Agreement defines "medical facilities" as "medical units, medical vehicles, and medical aircraft on the ground." (For information on camouflage painting, see AR 750-1.)

NOTE

There is no such thing as a "camouflaged" red cross. When camouflaging a medical unit, either cover up the red cross or take it down. A black cross on an olive drab background is not a symbol recognized under the Geneva Conventions.

(4) Medical evacuation vehicles and medical materiel containers will, unless ordered otherwise, be marked with the Distinctive Emblem (red cross on a white background) and other distinguishing insignia and color markings when required.

C-7. Loss of Protection of Medical Establishments and Units. Medical assets lose their protected status by committing acts "harmful to the enemy," Article 21, GWS. A warning must be given to the offending unit and a reasonable amount of time allowed to cease such activity.

a. Acts Harmful to the Enemy. The phrase "acts harmful to the enemy" is not defined in the Convention, but should be considered to include acts the purpose or effect of which is to harm the enemy, by facilitating or impeding military operations. Such harmful acts would include, for example, the use of a hospital as a shelter for able-bodied combatants, as an arms or ammunition dump, or as a military observation post. Another instance would be the deliberate siting of a medical unit in a position where it would impede an enemy attack.

b. Warning and Time Limit. The enemy has to warn the unit to put an end to the harmful acts and must fix a time limit on the conclusion of which he may open fire or attack if the warning has not been complied with. The phrase "in all appropriate cases" recognizes that there might obviously be cases where no time limit could be allowed. A body of troops approaching a hospital and met by heavy fire from every window would return fire without delay.

c. Use of Smoke and Obscurants. The use of smoke and obscurants during medical evacuation operations does not differ from the use of camouflage and does not constitute an act harmful to the enemy.

C-8. Conditions Not Depriving Medical Units and Establishments of Protection.

a. Article 22 of the GWS reads as follows: "The following conditions shall not be considered as depriving a medical unit or establishment of the protection guaranteed by Article 19:

(1) That the personnel of the unit or establishment are armed, and that they use the arms in their own defense, or in that of the wounded and sick in their charge.

(2) That in the absence of armed orderlies, the unit or establishment is protected by a picket or by sentries or by an escort.

(3) That small arms and ammunition taken from the wounded and sick and not yet handed to the proper service, are found in the unit or establishment.

(4) That personnel and materiel of the veterinary service are found in the unit or establishment, without forming an integral part thereof.

(5) That the humanitarian activities of medical units and establishments or of their personnel extend to the care of civilian wounded or sick."

b. These five conditions are not to be regarded as acts harmful to the enemy. These are particular cases where a medical unit retains its character as such, and its right to immunity, in spite of certain appearances, which might have led to the contrary, conclusion or, at least, created some doubt.

(1) Defense of medical units and self-defense by medical personnel. A medical unit is granted a privileged status under the laws of war. This status is based on the view that medical personnel are not combatants and that their role in the combat area is exclusively a humanitarian one. In recognition of the necessity of self-defense; however, medical personnel may be armed for their own defense or for the protection of the wounded and sick under their charge. To retain this privileged status, they must refrain from all aggressive action, and may only employ their weapons if attacked in violation of the Convention. They may not employ arms against enemy forces acting in conformity with the law of war and may not use force to prevent the capture of their unit by the enemy (it is, on the other hand, perfectly legitimate for a medical unit to withdraw in the face of the enemy). Medical personnel who use their arms in circumstances not justified by the law of war expose themselves to penalties for violation of the law of war and, provided they have been given due warning to cease such acts, may also forfeit the protection of the medical unit or establishment which they are protecting.

(a) Medical personnel may carry only small arms, such as rifles or pistols or authorized substitutes. AR 71-32 provides the policy that governs the small arms medical personnel are authorized to carry. AR 350-41 also supports this policy. It states "AMEDD personnel and non-AMEDD personnel in medical units will not be required to train or qualify with weapons other than individual or small arms weapons. However, AMEDD personnel attending training at NCOES courses will receive weapons instruction that is part of the curriculum. This will ensure that successful completion of the course is not jeopardized by failure to attend the weapons training portion of the curriculum."

(b) The presence of machine guns, grenade launchers, booby traps, hand grenades, light antitank weapons, or mines (regardless of the method by which they are detonated) in or around a medical unit or establishment would seriously jeopardize its entitlement to privileged status under the GWS. The deliberate arming of a medical unit with such items could

constitute an act harmful to the enemy and cause the medical unit to lose its protection, regardless of the location of the medical unit. See the previous discussion of loss of protection of medical units and establishments.

(2) Guarding of medical units. As a rule, a medical unit is to be guarded by its own personnel. However, it will not lose its protected status if the guard is performed by a number of armed soldiers. The military guard attached to a medical unit may use its weapons, just as armed medical personnel may, to ensure the protection of the unit. But, as in the case of medical personnel, the soldiers may only act in a purely defensive manner, and may not oppose the occupation or control of the unit by an enemy who is respecting the unit's privileged status. The status of such soldiers is that of ordinary members of the armed forces. The mere fact of their presence with a medical unit will shelter them from attack. In case of capture, they will be prisoners of war.

(3) Arms and ammunition taken from the wounded. Wounded arriving in a medical unit may still be in possession of small arms and ammunition, which will be taken from them and handed to authorities outside the medical unit. Should the enemy capture a unit before it is able to get rid of these arms, their presence is not of itself cause for denying the protection to be accorded the medical unit under the GWS.

(4) Personnel and materiel of the veterinary corps. The presence of personnel and materiel of the veterinary corps with a medical unit is authorized, even where they do not form an integral part of such unit.

(5) Care of civilian wounded or sick. A medical unit or establishment protected by the GWS may take in civilians as well as military wounded and sick without jeopardizing its privileged status. This clause merely sanctions what is actually done in practice.

C-9. 1977 Protocols to The Geneva Conventions. Amendments to The Geneva Conventions have been ratified by some of our allies and potential adversaries. The U.S. representative to the diplomatic conference signed these amendments, but our government has not officially ratified them.

GLOSSARY

AACG	arrival airfield control group
AAR	after action review
AC	Active Component
ACR	armored cavalry regiment
ACS	Army Community Service
ADC	area damage control
ADP	automated data processing
AER	Army Emergency Relief
AG	Adjutant General
AM	amplitude modulation
AMEDD	Army Medical Department (US Army)
AO	area of operation
APOD	aerial port of debarkation
APOE	aerial port of embarkation
AR	Army regulation
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
arty	artillery
ASAS	All Source Analysis System
ATCSS	Army Tactical Command and Control System
ATTN	attention
ATWESS	antitank weapon effects signature simulator
AUEL	authorized unit equipment list
AUTL	Army Universal Task List
BBS	battalion/brigade simulation
BCOC	Base Cluster Operations Center
BF	battle fatigue
BFACS	Battlefield Functional Area Control System
BLTM	battalion-level training model
BDAR	Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
C2	command and control
cal	caliber
CAS	close air support
CATS	Combined Arms Training Strategy
CCIR	commander's critical information requirements
Cdr	commander
CFX	command field exercise
CHS	combat health support
CINC	commander in chief
CMDR	commander
CMO	civil-military operations
CO	commander
COA	course of action
COMEX	communications exercise
COMMZ	communications zone
COMSEC	communications security
CONUS	continental United States
CONPLAN	contingency plan
COOP	continuity/contingency of operations plans
COSCOM	Corps Support Command

CP	command post
CPT	captain
CPX	command post exercise
CS	combat, smoke
CSS	combat service support
CSSAMO	Combat Service Support Automation Management Office
CSSCS	Combat Service Support Control System
CTA	common table of allowances
CTC	Combat Training Center
CTG	Composite Transportation Group
CTP	coherent tactical picture
CZ	combat zone
DA	Department of the Army
DACG	departure airfield control group
D.C.	District of Columbia
DC	direct current
DD	Department of Defense
DE	damage expectancy
DEL	deployment equipment list
DET	detachment
DISCOM	Division Support Command (US Army)
DOD	Department of Defense
DOL	Director of Logistics
DS	direct support
ECCM	electronic counter-countermeasures
EEFI	essential elements of friendly information
ELSEC	electronic security
EOC	Emergency Operations Center
EPW	enemy prisoners of war
ETA	estimated time of arrival
EW	electronic warfare
F	Fahrenheit
FASCAM	family of scatterable mines
FBCB2	Force XXI Battle Command Battalion/Brigade and Below
FDC	Fire Detection Center/Fire Direction Center
FM	field manual; frequency modulated
FRAGO	fragmentary order
Freq	frequency
FSB	forward support battalion
FSG	forward support group
FTX	field training exercise
GC	Geneva Convention
HHC	headquarters and headquarters company
HN	host nation
HQ	Headquarters
hr	hour(s)
HUMINT	human intelligence
IAW	in accordance with
ICUMO	installation commander unit movement officer
ID	identification
INTSUM	intelligence summary

IPB	intelligence preparation of the battlefield
IR	intelligence requirement
ITEP	Individual Training Evaluation Program
ITO	installation traffic office(r)
KIA	killed in action
LAW	light antitank weapon
LCX	logistics coordination exercise
LDR	Leader
LOC	Logistics Operations Center
LOGSTAT	logistics status
LT	lieutenant
LTA	local training area
MA	marshaling area
MACOM	major Army command
MAPEX	map exercise
MCA	Movement Control Agency
MCS	Maneuver Control System
MCSR	Materiel Condition Status Report
MCX	maneuver coordination exercise
MCT	movement control team
METL	mission essential task list
METT-T	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, and time available
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time, civilians
MHE	materials handling equipment
MIJI	meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference
MIL	Master Incident List
MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System
min	minute(s)
mm	millimeter
MOBPLAN	mobility plan
MOPP	mission-oriented protection posture
MOS	military occupational specialty
MOUT	military operations on urbanized terrain
MP	military police
MQS	military qualification standards
MSB	Main Support Battalion
MSR	main supply route
MST	maintenance support team
MTMC	Military Traffic Management Command
MTP	Mission Training Plan
MTS	movement tracking system
MWR	morale, welfare, and recreation
NAI	named area of interest
NATO	North American Treaty Organization
NBC	nuclear, biological, and chemical
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOES	Noncommissioned Officer Education System
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge
NCS	Net Control Station
No.	number

OC	observer/controller
OCONUS	outside continental United States
OEG	operational exposure guidance
OIC	officer in charge
OP	observation post
OPFOR	opposing forces
OPLAN	operations plan
OPORD	operations order
OPSEC	operations security
OPTEMPO	operational tempo
PAM	pamphlet
PAO	public affairs office
PERSTAT	personnel status
PIR	primary/priority intelligence requirement
PLL	prescribed load list
PLT	platoon
PMCS	preventive maintenance checks and services
PMCT	port movement control team
PMO	provost marshal office
POD	port of debarkation
POL	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
POV	privately owned vehicle
PSA	Port Support Activity
psi	pounds per square inch
PX	post exchange
RAA	rear assembly area
RC	Reserve Component
rds	rounds
RP	release point
RSOP	redeployment standing operating procedures
RSO&I	reception, staging, onward movement, and integration
RTD	return to duty
SAW	small arms weapon
SCPE	Simplified Collective-Protection Equipment
SEC	section
SFC	sergeant first class
SGT	sergeant
SIDPERS	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System
SIGINT	signal intelligence
SIGSEC	signals security
SITREP	situation report
SJA	Staff Judge Advocate
SM	soldier's manual
SMCT	soldier's manual of common tasks
SOI	signal operation instruction
SOP	standing operating procedure
SP	start point
SPBS-R	Standard Property Book System-Redesign
SPOD	sea port of debarkation
SPOE	sea port of embarkation
SPOTREP	spot report

SRB	Safety Review Board
SRP	Soldiers Readiness Program
S1	Adjutant (US Army)
S2	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
S3	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
S4	Supply Officer (US Army)
S6	communications/electronics officer
SSG	staff sergeant
SSI	standard signal instructions
STAFFEX	staff exercise
STAMIS	Standard Army Management Information System
STP	soldier training publication
STRIKEWARN	strike warning
STX	situational training exercise
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TAA	tactical assembly area
TADSS	training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations
TC	training circular
TCF	tactical combat force
TCMD	transportation control movement document
TDY	temporary duty
TEMPEST	compromising emanations
TEWT	training evaluation without troops
TG	trainer’s guide
TM	technical manual
TMT	transportation motor transport
TOCEX	tactical operations center exercise
tng	training
TOE	tables of organization and equipment
TRADOC	Training and Doctrine Command
TRANSCOM	Transportation Command
TSB	theater staging base
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
TT	truck terminal
TTP	trailer transfer point
UAA	unit assembly area
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
UIC	unit identification code
UMC	unit movement coordinator
UMD	unit movement data
UMO	unit movement officer
UPW	unit proficiency worksheet
US	United States (of America)
USA	United States Army
USACASCOM	United States Army Combined Arms Support Command
USAREUR	United States Army Europe
USCS	United States Customs Service
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture
USR	unit status report

VA	Virginia
WARNO	warning order
WESTCOM	Western Command
WIA	Wounded In Action
wpn	weapon
XO	executive officer

REFERENCES

AR 25-400-2. *The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS).* 1 October 2000
AR 27-10. *Legal Services: Military Justice.* 24 June 1996
AR 71-32. *Force Development and Documentation - Consolidated Policies.* 3 March 1997
AR 190-8. *Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees and Other Detainees.* 1 October 1997
AR 190-13. *The Army Physical Security Program.* 30 September 1993
AR 215-1. *Morale, Welfare, and Recreation Activities and Nonappropriated Fund Instrumentalities.* 25 October 1998
AR 220-1. *Unit Status Reporting.* 1 September 1997
AR 220-10. *Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM).* 15 June 1973
AR 350-1. *Army Training.* 1 August 1981
AR 350-41. *Training in Units.* 19 March 1993
AR 380-5. *Department of the Army Information Security Program.* 29 September 2000
AR 380-19. *Information Systems Security.* 27 February 1998
AR 380-19-1. *(C) Control of Compromising Emanations (U).* 17 September 1990
AR 385-10. *The Army Safety Program.* 23 May 1988
AR 530-1. *Operations Security (OPSEC).* 3 March 1995
AR 600-8-1. *Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance.* 20 October 1994
AR 600-8-14. *Identification Cars for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel.* 1 March 1998
AR 600-8-19. *Enlisted Promotions and Reductions.* 2 October 2000
AR 600-8-22. *Military Awards.* 25 February 1995
AR 600-8-104. *Military Personnel Information Management/Records.* 27 April 1992
AR 608-1. *Army Community Service Center.* 1 October 1999
AR 608-18. *The Army Family Advocacy Program.* 1 September 1995
AR 614-185. *Requisitions and Assignment Instructions for Officers.* 15 March 1983
AR 614-200. *Enlisted Assignments and Utilization Management.* 12 July 2001
AR 700-84. *Issue and Sale of Personal Clothing.* 15 May 1983
AR 710-2. *Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level.* 31 October 1997
AR 710-3. *Asset and Transaction Reporting System.* 31 March 1998
AR 725-50. *Requisition, Receipt, and Issue System.* 15 November 1995
AR 750-1. *Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations.* 1 August 1994
ARTEP 55-62-MTP. *Mission Training Plan for Headquarters, Transportation Composite Group.* 1 September 1994
DA Form 2028. *Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms.* 1 September 1994
DA PAM 27-1. *Treaties Governing Land Warfare.* 7 December 1956
DA PAM 350-38. *Standards in Weapon Training.* 3 July 1997
DA PAM 350-39. *Standards in Weapons Training (Special Operations Forces).* 3 July 1997
DA PAM 600-8-1. *Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Battalion S1 Level Procedures.* 1 August 1986
DA PAM 600-8-2. *Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Personnel Service Center Level Procedures.* 1 August 1986
DA PAM 710-2-2. *Supply Support Activity Supply System: Manual Procedures.* 30 September 1998
DD Form 2A. *Personnel Qualification Record, Part 1 - Enlisted Peacetime.* 15 June 1982
DD Form 1934. *Geneva Conventions Identity Card for Medical and Religious Personnel Who Serve in or Accompany the Armed Forces.* 15 July 1974
DD MANUAL 4525.6-M, Volumes I and II. *DOD Postal Manual.* 15 February 1987

DOD 4500.32-R, VOL 1. *Military Standard Transportation and Movement Procedures.* 15 March 1987
DOD 4500.32-R, VOL 2. *Military Standard Transportation and Movement Procedures (MILSTAMP): Transportation Account Codes (TACS).* 15 February 1987
FM 3-0. *Operations.* 14 June 2001
FM 3-3. *Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance.* 16 November 1992
FM 3-4. *NBC Protection.* 29 May 1992
FM 3-5. *NBC Decontamination.* 28 July 2000
FM 3-19.30. *Physical Security.* 8 January 2001
FM 3-100.4. *Environmental Considerations in Military Operations.* 15 June 2000
FM 5-103. *Survivability.* 10 June 1985
FM 6-22.5. *Combat Stress.* 23 June 2000
FM 7-8. *Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad.* 22 April 1992
FM 7-20. *The Infantry Battalion.* 6 April 1992
FM 8-55. *Planning for Health Service Support.* 9 September 1994
FM 10-27-2. *Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations.* 18 June 1991
FM 10-27-3. *Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for Quartermaster Headquarters Operations.* 30 October 1990
FM 10-27-4. *Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders.* 14 April 2000
FM 12-6. *Personnel Doctrine.* 9 September 1994
FM 14-100. *Financial Management Operations.* 7 May 1997
FM 16-1. *Religious Support.* 26 May 1995
FM 19-4. *Military Police Battlefield Circulation Control, Area Security, and Enemy Prisoner of War Operations.* 7 May 1993
FM 21-11. *First Aid for Soldiers.* 27 October 1988
FM 21-31. *Topographic Symbols.* 19 June 1961
FM 22-51. *Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control.* 29 September 1994
FM 24-16. *Communications-Electronics Operations, Orders, Records, and Reports.* 7 April 1978
FM 24-18. *Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques.* 30 September 1987
FM 24-22. *Communications-Electronics Management System (CEMS).* 30 June 1977
FM 24-33. *Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures.* 17 July 1990
FM 24-35. *(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI".* 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1. *(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions.* 2 October 1990
FM 25-100. *Training The Force.* 15 November 1988
FM 25-101. *Battle Focused Training.* 30 September 1990
FM 27-10. *The Law Of Land Warfare.* 18 July 1956
FM 34-1. *Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations.* 27 September 1994
FM 34-54. *Technical Intelligence.* 30 January 1998
FM 34-80. *Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations.* 15 April 1986
FM 34-130. *Intelligence Preparation Of The Battlefield.* 8 July 1994
FM 44-8. *Combined Arms for the Air Defense.* 1 June 1999
FM 55-1. *Transportation Operations.* 3 October 1995
FM 55-9. *Unit Air Movement Planning.* 5 April 1993
FM 55-10. *Movement Control.* 9 February 1999
FM 55-15. *Transportation Reference Data.* 27 October 1997
FM 55-30. *Army Motor Transport Units and Operations.* 27 June 1997
FM 55-65. *Strategic Deployment.* 3 October 1995
FM 63-3. *Corps Support Command.* 30 September 1993
FM 63-4. *Combat Service Support Operations - Theater Army Area Command.* 24 September 1984
FM 63-20. *Forward Support Battalion.* 26 February 1990
FM 63-21. *Main Support Battalion.* 7 August 1990

FM 90-26. *Airborne Operations.* 18 December 1990
FM 100-10. *Combat Service Support.* 3 October 1995
FM 100-14. *Risk Management.* 23 April 1998
FM 100-16. *Army Operational Support.* 31 May 1995
FM 100-17. *Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization.* 28 October 1992
FM 100-17-3. *Reception, Staging, Onward Movement, and Integration.* 17 March 1999
FM 101-5. *Staff Organization and Operations.* 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1. *Operational Terms and Graphics.* 30 September 1997
STP 9-63Z5-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide: MOS 63Z, Mechanical Maintenance Supervisor Skill Level 5.* 30 October 1989
STP 10-92ABDII-MQS. *Military Qualification Standards II, Quartermaster Corps, Quartermaster General (92A), Supply and Materiel Management (92B), and Delivery and Materiel (92D) Company Grade Officer's Manual.* 16 September 1991
STP 10-92M14-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 57F, Graves Registration Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4.* 28 February 1989
STP 21-1-SMCT. *Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks, Skill Level 1.* 1 October 2001
STP 21-24-SMCT. *Soldier's Manual Of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Level 2-4.* 1 October 2001
STP 55-88M34-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 88M, Motor Transport Operator, Skill Levels 3/4.* 23 December 1993
TC 25-1. *Training Land.* 25 June 2001
TC 25-6. *Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System.* 3 October 1995
TC 25-8. *Training Ranges.* 25 February 1992
TC 25-20. *A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews.* 30 September 1993
TM 38-250. *Preparing Hazardous Materials for Military Air Shipments.* 1 March 1997
TM 55-2200-001-12. *Transportability Guidance for Application of Blocking, Bracing and Tiedown Materials for Rail Transport.* 31 May 1978

QUESTIONNAIRE

MISSION TRAINING PLAN (MTP) USER FEED

User feedback is an important link in the process of improving training publications. Your recommendations are requested to improve this training publication. To make it easier to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please answer all questions frankly and mail to Commander, USACASCOM, Training Directorate, ATTN: ATCL-AT, Fort Lee, VA 23801-1511.

MTP NUMBER_____DATE_____

MTP TITLE_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (CO, Plt Sgt. etc.)? _____

2. How long have you served in this position? _____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component? _____

5. What is your unit?
   A. CONUS B. USAREUR
   C. WESTCOM D. 8TH USA
   E. Other (specify)_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

   A. Has made training worse. _____

_____

   B. Has made training better. _____

_____

   C. Has had no effect on training. _____

_____

   D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products?

A. More difficult. _____

_____

B. Easier. _____

_____

C. About the same. _____

_____

D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

8. What part of the MTP document was least useful?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

_____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines _____

_____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

_____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

_____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

_____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

_____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

_____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES: STX AND FTX.

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this intended purpose?

A. They do not prepare the unit at all. _____

B. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements. ___

_____

_____

C. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements.

_____

_____

D. They help but only provide 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements.

_____

_____

E. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements.

_____

_____

13. Would you recommend that any STX or FTX be added or deleted from the MTP (specify FTX or STX)?

_____

_____

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A. Too many pages. _____

_____

B. Hard to read and understand. _____

_____

C. Needs more illustrations. _____

_____

_____

D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

_____

_____

E. Needs more information on leader training. _____

_____

F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises. _____

_____

_____

G. Needs more information on support and resources. _____

_____

H. Needs more information on normally attached elements.

_____

_____

I. Does not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills. _____

_____

_____

J. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A. Too many pages. _____

_____

B. Hard to read and understand. _____

_____

C. Needs more illustrations. _____

_____

D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

_____

E. Needs more information on leader training. _____

_____

F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises. _____

_____

G. Needs more information on support and resources. _____

_____

H. Needs more information on normally attached elements. _____

_____

I. Does not interface well with other training products. _____

_____

J. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

16. How many STXs or FTXs have you trained personnel in or participated in personally?

_____

_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP:

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

A. Leave it out. _____

_____

B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

_____

C. Clarify how to use this chapter without the training exercises. _____

_____

D. The standards are too detailed. _____

_____

E. The standards are not too detailed enough. _____

_____

F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime.

_____

_____

G. Do not change; chapter is fine. _____

_____

H. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluation?

A. Leave it out. _____

_____

B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

_____

C. Clarify how to use this chapter without the training exercises. _____

_____

D. The standards are too detailed. _____

_____

E. The standards are not detailed enough. _____

_____

F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime. _____

_____

G. Do not change; chapter is fine. _____

_____

H. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

19. Additional Comments. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

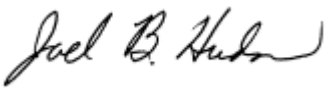
_____

ARTEP 55-716-MTP
1 APRIL 2002

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0210004

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and Army Reserve: To be distributed in accordance the initial distribution number 121406, requirements for ARTEP 55-716-MTP, 3 November 1993.

PIN: 071722-000